

CATapult Courseware

Module 3

Verbal Ability

Published by IMS Learning Resources Pvt. Ltd. in the Year 2020

Registered Office: 6th Floor, NCL Building, 'E' Block, Near Bandra Family Court,
Bandra Kurla Complex (BKC), Bandra (E), Mumbai - 400051
Tel.: +91 22 66170000
Toll Free: 1800-1234-467
CIN : U80220MH1999PTC121823
E-mail : support@imsindia.com Website: www.imsindia.com

Copyright © IMS Learning Resources Pvt. Ltd.

All copyrights to this material vests with IMS Learning Resources Pvt. Ltd. No part of this material either in part or as a whole shall be copied, reprinted, reproduced, sold, distributed or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, or stored in any retrieval system of any nature without the permission of IMS Learning Resources Pvt. Ltd., and any such violation would entail initiation of suitable legal proceedings.

The views of and opinions expressed in this book are not necessarily those of the publishers. While every effort has been made to ensure that all facts are stated correctly, the publishers regret their inability to accept responsibility for any inadvertent errors or inaccuracies. Readers are advised in their own interest to reconfirm facts before acting upon them.

The publishers shall endeavour, wherever possible to remedy all errors of commission and omission which are brought to their attention in subsequent editions.

This book is sold subject to the condition that it shall not, but way of trader or otherwise, be lent, resold, hired out, or otherwise circulated without the publisher's prior written consent in any form of binding or cover other than that in which it is published and without a similar condition including this condition being imposed on the subsequent purchaser and without limiting the rights under copyright reserved above.

VA-3.1 | SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT AND PRONOUNS



Subject Verb Agreement

Introduction

We sometimes make mistakes in speech and in writing, without even realising it. One such area is the mismatch between the verb and its subject. There are certain guidelines and relationships that help us differentiate between the *right* and the *wrong* usage. Competitive exams require one to pay special attention to these minute details, which one might miss while determining whether the given sentence is grammatically correct or not.

A verb must agree with its subject in number and person. Following are the subject-verb agreement rules:

1. A singular subject takes a singular verb while plural subjects take plural verbs.

Example

Remnants of the Harappan Valley Civilisation at Lothal near Dholka *were* discovered after independence. The book *argues* that human hierarchies cannot be eliminated.

2. Two or more singular nouns or pronouns joined by *and* require a plural verb.

Example

Nishu and Suraj *are* among the few students who *were* selected.

3. If two singular nouns suggest one idea to the mind, or refer to the same person or thing, the verb should be singular.

Example

My friend and guide *plays* the piano.

4. Words joined to a singular subject by *with*, *as well as*, *along with*, are parenthetical. The number of the verb is not affected in such cases.

Examples

The minister, with all his bodyguards, *was* present there.
He along with his family *is* supposed to attend the party.

5. Two or more singular subjects connected by *or* or *nor* require a singular verb.

Example

Neither a building nor a tree *was* left standing.

6. When two or more subjects of different numbers are joined by *or* or *nor*, the verb matches the nearest subject.

Examples

Neither Priya nor her friends *were* to be seen.

Either the woman or the men *are* happy.

Either the students or their teacher *is* at fault.

7. When the subjects joined by *or* or *nor* refer to different persons, the verb agrees with the nearer one.

Examples

Either you or he *is* at fault.

Neither I nor she *has* the book.

8. Indefinite pronouns like *anyone, anybody, someone, somebody, no one, nobody, everyone, everybody* and distributive pronouns like *each, neither, either, many a* have singular connotations and, thus, must be followed by a singular verb.

Examples

Neither of my parents *speaks* French.

Many a question *remains* unanswered.

Nobody *was* there in the meeting.

9. Two nouns qualified by *each* or *every*, even though connected by *and*, require a singular verb.

Examples

Every teacher and every student *was* given a packet of sweets.

Each one in the room and each in the balcony *was* terrified by the noise.

10. Some nouns, which are plural in form (ending in -s) but singular in meaning, take a singular verb.

Examples

Economics *is* an interesting subject.

Maths *is* rather difficult.

The news regarding the scam *was* broadcast in no time.

11. Some plural nouns (ending in -s) which are singular in form but plural in meaning take plural verbs.

Examples

The stocked goods *were* sold at a much higher rate.

Scissors *were* used to cut the tape.

12. Indefinite pronouns like *none*, *all* and *some* take singular or plural verbs depending on the context.

Examples

None of my friends *are* in Mumbai.
All that glitters *is* not gold.

13. Singular subjects in first and second person (I, you) do not have -s endings in their verb forms.

Singular subjects in third person (he, she, it) have -s endings.

Examples

She likes him a lot.
Do you like him?

14. A collective noun takes a singular verb when the collection is thought of as one whole, and a plural verb when the individual parts of which it is composed of are thought of as separate.

Examples

The Kelkar Committee *has* already submitted its report.
The jury *are* divided in their opinion.
The police *are* searching for the accomplices.
The police department *is* meant to restore law and order.

15. When the plural noun is a proper name for some single object or some collective unit, it must be followed by a singular verb.

Examples

The United States *is* a powerful nation.
A Farewell to Arms *was* written by Ernest Hemingway.

16. When the plural noun denotes some specific quantity or amount considered as a whole, the verb is generally singular.

Examples

Ten lakh rupees *is* a huge amount.
Three kilometres *is* a long walk.

17. In a sentence with a compound subject, the positive and not the negative subject agrees with the verb.

Examples

The pilot but not the hostesses *is* going to be penalised.
Some doctors and not only Dr. Shaikh *are* going to attend the conference.

18. The verb which is part of a clause agrees with the noun/pronoun modified by the preposition/gerund/relative pronoun.

Examples

The surgical instrument, which *was* sold at high price, is not useful.

He who governs the least *governs* the best.

19. Some adjectives like *more*, *most* take singular or plural verbs depending on the context.

Example:

Most of the board members *have* endorsed the Act.

Most of it *is* wrong.

Pronouns

Introduction

Pronouns help us avoid repetition of nouns in written as well as spoken English. But they should be used carefully, or else they give rise to ambiguity.

A *Pronoun* renames (takes the place of) a noun that comes before it.

An *Antecedent* is that which comes before the pronoun.

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement means that when one replaces a noun with a pronoun, the pronoun has to have a form that matches the noun. A pronoun must agree with its antecedent in number, person and gender and must refer to only one antecedent.

Example

She is the lady *who* saved a thousand lives.

In the above example, the pronoun *who* agrees with the antecedent noun *lady*.

1. Pronoun-antecedent Agreement and Gender

When the antecedent noun form is not gender-sensitive, one has to be very meticulous while using the consequent pronoun form. The need for pronoun-antecedent agreement can create problems regarding the implementation of correct gender in consequent pronoun forms.

Example

A student must see *his* counsellor before the end of the semester.

Here the antecedent *student* agrees with the pronoun *his* as per the existing rules of grammar. But there can be a female student as well. In such a situation in order to be politically correct, one can pluralise, i.e., write:

Students must see *their* counsellor before the end of the semester.

One can also rewrite the sentence as:

A student must see *his* or *her* counsellor before the end of the semester. (But this has stilted effect, so, we avoid this structure).

Notes

- Indefinite pronouns like *anyone, anybody, everyone, everybody, someone, somebody, no one* and *nobody* are always singular. This is sometimes confusing. We often feel that *everyone* and *everybody* (especially) refer to more than one person.

Examples

Everyone who visits the court has to wait.

Someone is special if someone is loved.

- Singular antecedents like *man, woman, person, each, either, neither, sort, kind*, etc., take singular pronouns.

Examples

Is he/she a good *person*?

This kind of a behaviour is unexcepted.

2. The Placement of Relative Pronouns

Relative pronouns like *who, whom, that, which*, etc., are generally placed just after their antecedent nouns or pronouns.

Examples

The girl *who* stood first in class was the grandchild of the old beggar. ---- (1)

The girl was the grandchild of the old beggar *who* stood first in class. ---- (2)

Here, the pronoun *who* has to be correctly placed next to the relevant noun. If one wants to convey that the girl has stood first in class, then (1) is correct. If one wants to convey that the beggar has stood first in class, then (2) is correct. Otherwise, the meaning of the sentence changes. This is an important aspect of pronoun-antecedent agreement.

Note

One of the most frequently asked questions about grammar pertains to choosing the right pronoun from the following: *who, whose, whom, whoever, whomever*. The number *singular* or *plural* of the pronoun (and its accompanying verbs) is determined by what the pronoun refers to; it can refer to a single person or a group of people.

Examples

The person *who* hit my car should pay to fix the damages.

The people *who* have been standing in the line should get in first.

3. Agreement with More than One Noun

When there are two or more nouns in a sentence, one has to be very careful, while quoting their consequent pronoun forms.

Example:

Sheetal and Shilpa are good friends. *She* stays in Worli.

Now in the sentence given above, we do not know whether the pronoun, *she*, refers to Sheetal or Shilpa. In such a situation, one must use the specific proper noun instead of a pronoun to put forth the correct idea or one can also use *former* or *latter*, i.e.,

Sheetal and Shilpa are good friends. The *latter* stays in Worli.

4. Pronoun-antecedent Agreement in Comparative Statements

In a comparative statement, similar elements should be compared, and the pronoun should replace only those antecedents that are compared.

Examples

His look is better than *her*. (incorrect)

His look is better than *hers*. (correct)

In the above examples, the comparison is between *look*, and not between *him* and *her*. Thus, the second sentence is correct.

5. Agreement with a Collective Noun

A pronoun can both be singular and plural if its antecedent is a collective noun. A pronoun is singular if the collective noun is regarded as a singular unit, it is plural if the collective noun represents a group or collection.

Examples

The *jury* decided to postpone *its* verdict.

The *jury* decided to review *their* decisions.

Note that in the first sentence the *jury* is used in a singular sense. In the second sentence, it implies a group of members; the *jury* (members) decided to review *their* decisions.

6. Case Agreement in Personal Pronouns

Consequent pronouns that replace their preceding subjects are generally in the subjective case. Subjective pronouns are also used after linking verbs and after conjunctive words like *but*, *as* and *than*.

Example

None *but* he would do the job.

Note

But when used as a preposition, takes an objective pronoun form.

Examples

No other was interested *but* her.

None other did the work *but* him.

Objective pronouns are used when the pronoun is either the object of a transitive verb or of a preposition.

Examples

It was an issue *between him* and *her*. (*Him* and *her* are objects of preposition *between*.)

He gave *her* a piece of his mind. (*Her* is the object of the transitive verb *gave*.)

7. Use of Who/Whom

Who is used to show which person one is referring to. *Who* is not used to denote animals or things. It is generally used as the subject of a verb.

Example

The man *who* came yesterday wants to rent the house.

Who is also used to give more information about the subject, usually a person.

Example

My brother *who* is a scientist is coming to stay with us.

Who is simply used in questions to ask about the name or function of a person/persons.

Examples

Who are you going out with?

Who brought you the letter?

Whom is used in the objective case and is more common in formal writing. Infact, the use of *whom* as a pronoun after prepositions is very formal. *Whom* is also used as an object of a transitive verb.

Example

To *whom* should I address my speech?

Whom is usually used when the object is a person.

Example

Thomas, *whom* nobody trusted in the village, died yesterday. (Nobody trusted *whom*? The answer is *Thomas*. So we use *whom* here and not *who*).

8. Use of That/Which

That may refer to both persons and things.

Example

He is the one *that* likes hiking.

Which refers to animals and things and not to persons. *Which* may be used to ask questions.

Example

Where is the pen, *which* is mine?



CLASS EXERCISE

Directions: *Identify the errors in each sentence and correct them. If there is no error, then write 'no error'.*

1. You and I are going to enjoy this outing.
2. Either of these roads leads to the theatre.
3. She sent word that she would be arriving soon.
4. The minister as well as his team are arriving tomorrow.
5. Fourteen rupees are a large sum for the migrant worker.
6. Two and two make four.
7. A stitch in time save nine.

Directions: *Fill in the blanks with proper verb forms.*

8. Bread and butter _____ his favourite food. (are, is)
9. French, as well as German, _____ taught in the institute. (was, were)
10. There _____ neither food nor water in the house. (were, was)
11. Politics _____ always discussed during his lecture. (is, are)
12. The cattle _____ grazing in the meadow till late evening. (was, were)
13. Neither of my children _____ to school. (go, goes)
14. Neither Ram nor his parents _____ present in the party. (was, were)

15. None of his relatives _____ in Canada. (stay, stays)
16. Either the board coordinator or the representatives _____ responsible for the delay. (is, are, was, were)

Directions: *For each sentence, choose the appropriate pronouns to complete the sentences.*

17. Give the flowers to whoever/whomever comes to the door and mention who/whom sent them.
18. “It isn’t the question of me/my going to Africa”, said the new manager, “only of who/whom I should go with”.
19. I hurt myself/me as much as I did him/himself.
20. We thought it was they/them who believed that politics knew no better candidate than she/her.
21. Whosoever/Whom is involved in the crime will be punished by she/her.
22. If this pen is him/his, that pen is my/mine.
23. Him/He whom/who laughs last laughs the longest.
24. He is the philosopher who/whom analyses like a genius and who/whom all praise.
25. He himself/me is a testimony to his/him good acts.
26. Of who/whom are you speaking, the lady who has just left or me/I?

Directions: *Write the correct form of pronouns in the following sentences.*

27. She and _____ went for a dinner party. (I, me)
28. That is the difference between you and _____. (he, him)

29. No other man _____ the President knew how to tackle socio-economic issues. (but, that)

30. We are not so rich as _____. (they, them)

31. Nobody but _____ understood what was to be done. (him, he)

Directions: *Identify the pronouns in the following sentences and state its kind.*

32. The children decorated the room themselves.

33. Each of the students receives a book.

34. Either of the paths leads to Rome.

35. None of Dante's allegories interested me.

36. Somebody stole the file from his cabin.

37. This is the pen my aunt gifted me.

38. They themselves were responsible for cleaning the pavements.

39. The responsibility to keep the environment clean is ours.

40. He who forgives is forgiven.

41. I found the book that I had misplaced last month.



PRACTICE EXERCISE-1

Directions: For each blank, choose the correct word from the pair of words given in brackets. In some cases, both words may be appropriate.

1. Simran and _____ (I / me) go out for a movie almost every weekend.
2. The protagonist of the movie is _____ (he / him).
3. You, _____ (she / her) and I must make a pact to meet one another at least once a year.
4. Abhay is much taller than _____ (he / him).
5. Hindu College's team scored as many runs as _____ (they / them).
6. It was _____ (I / me) that was calling you incessantly.
7. My grandfather loved Rohan like his own son. He left all his money to Mohit and _____ (he / him).
8. It is left to you and _____ (I / me) to decide whether the claim is valid.
9. The minister does not seem to care much about _____ (we / us) the voters.
10. I will ask my mother to please let Roma and _____ (I / me) go to the amusement park.
11. Sudha gifted a gold-plated watch to _____ (he / him) on their anniversary.
12. They joined _____ (we / us) for the picnic to Madh Island.
13. It was very easy for _____ (she / her) to forget the past and start afresh.
14. _____ (We / Us) teachers feel very proud when our students become successful in their endeavours.
15. It is a formidable challenge for _____ (we / us) mountain climbers to climb Mt. Everest.

Directions: For each blank, choose the correct word from the pair of words given in brackets.

16. A student must deposit _____ (his or her / their) fee before the first day of the semester.
17. There is still hope that the crises may sort _____ (itself / themselves) out.
18. The leader of the masses must work in _____ (his / their) best interest.
19. The pack of wolves is scouting for _____ (its / their) next prey.
20. The pair of spectacles will not repair _____ (itself / themselves); you will have to take _____ (it / them) to the optician.
21. When a parent does not believe that _____ (his or her / their) child is right, _____ (he or she / they) should not condone _____ (its / their) actions.
22. All must show proof of _____ (his / their) membership when purchasing discounted tickets at the theatre.

23. All the hype will run _____ (its / their) course within a week.
24. There are many female characters in the movie; each has been given _____ (her / their) own unique personality, so that we do not consider them only as a group.
25. Somebody has left _____ (his or her / their) dirty laundry in the basket.
26. Everybody is responsible for _____ (his or her / their) belongings.
27. Each one needs to accept that _____ (his or her / their) life will not turn out to be a bed of roses.
28. Some believe that _____ (his or her / their) future will be brighter if the AAP comes into power.
29. Some of the coffee fell out of _____ (its / their) pouch.
30. Many desire an increase in _____ (his or her / their) income in the coming financial year.

Directions: *Given below are some sentences. Read them carefully and identify the errors, if there are any, with respect to the use of pronouns.*

31. After she met the principal and complained about the teacher, she felt relaxed because she could finally teach him a lesson.
32. Ambiguity, evasion and body language, such as air quotes were transforming college English into a coded sign language in where speakers worked hard to avoid saying anything definite.
33. Rohan and Aryan love to watch movies and on weekends one would mostly find him in front of the TV.
34. On his way home, Ravi picked up his son and his friend and took them to the nearby theatre.
35. You may be living in a developed country instead of a third world country, but that does not mean your ethics are better than them.

Directions: *Choose the correct word for each blank from the pair of words given in brackets.*

36. The rhythm of the breeze _____ (is / are) calming.
37. All the cats in the neighbourhood _____ (is / are) sitting near the garbage bin.
38. I _____ (am / are) planning to watch a movie over the weekend and they _____ (am / are) also keen on joining me.
39. The suffering of the saints _____ (is / are) an issue that is frequently addressed in the *Word of God*.
40. The quality of the beverages produced by this espresso machine _____ (is / are) pathetic.
41. It appears from the judgment of the Supreme Court itself that the termination of the services of the workmen _____ (was / were) conceded to be a retrenchment.

42. Statistics _____ (is / are) often the least favourite optional subject in college.
43. The news about his father's death _____ (were / was) kept secret till he completed his race at the University Stadium.
44. Conjunctivitis _____ (cause/ causes) inflammation of the membrane covering the inside of the eyelids and the outer part of the eyeball.
45. The Netherlands _____ (were / was) one of the first parliamentary democracies.
46. Arthur Golden's *Memoirs of a Geisha* _____ (is / are) narrated from the point of view of Nitta Sayuri, a retired geisha in her seventies.
47. The Skoda Yeti and the Fabia _____ (has / have) spearheaded the growth in the sales of Skoda cars.
48. The famous author and playwright _____ (have / has) suddenly disappeared from the literary circle.
49. The actor and the director _____ (was / were) felicitated at the annual function.
50. The long and short of the matter _____ (is / are) that the countries will have to deliver on their commitment.
51. The teacher, as well as the student, _____ (is / are) a learner.
52. The directors of the company, together with the CEO, _____ (have / has) decided to implement new employee welfare policies from the next financial year.
53. He, along with his parents, _____ (are / is) scheduled to be in Pocatello for the conference.
54. Each participant _____ (were / was) categorized into one of four groups.
55. Each day and each hour of a BAI wildlife safari _____ (is / are) carefully planned.
56. Every mother and every child _____ (have / has) the right to health care.
57. Each of the applicants _____ (were / was) interviewed individually.
58. Neither life nor happiness _____ (is / are) achieved by the pursuit of irrational whims.
59. If either of the boys _____ (go / goes) to live with her, it should be under a joint custody order.
60. Many a puny child, incapable of vigorous effort of mind or body, _____ (is / are) the victim of an impoverished diet.
61. If more than one job _____ (is / are) currently selected, the action will be applied to the one last selected.
62. He never wants people to think that his happiness or his success _____ (originate / originates) from anyone or anything but God.
63. No rule or policy _____ (is / are) effective without proper implementation.



PRACTICE EXERCISE-2

Directions: For each blank, choose the correct word from the pair of words given in brackets. In some cases, both words may be appropriate.

1. Roshan gave Girish and ____ (I / me) a loan in our time of need so we are indebted to him.
2. Megha loves you more than ____ (I / me).
3. ____ (Who / whom) will watch the baby when we are away?
4. ____ (Who / whom) do you like the most in this show?
5. To ____ (who / whom) did you hand over the file I had given you?
6. The Chinese lady, ____ (who / whom) we met at the party, turned out to be our neighbour.
7. The science professors, ____ (who / whom) sit in the first floor staff room, have been asked to submit their assessments by Friday.
8. Stella was so worried about ____ (who / whom) she should ask for help to complete the project that she ended up not completing the job on time.
9. The voters will vote for ____ (whoever / whomever) they please.
10. The casting director will select ____ (whichever / whoever) actor he feels is appropriate for the role.
11. My supervisor does not approve of ____ (me / my) taking a long lunch break.
12. ____ (Them / Their) sniggering offended the class teacher.
13. Riti and Rahini always look out for ____ (each other / them).
14. Smitha insisted on driving ____ (her / herself) to the mall.
15. Shefali fell down and hurt ____ (her / herself).

Directions: For each blank, choose the correct word from the pair of words given in brackets.

16. Many a teacher joined the strike simply because it would reduce ____ (his or her / their) workload.
17. Nobody can figure out a way to be happy by ____ (himself or herself / themselves).
18. Both the brothers always yearned for ____ (his / their) father's approval.
19. Few have the self-discipline to regulate ____ (his or her / their) sleeping hours.
20. None of the actors could come up with a convincing performance during ____ (his or her / their) practice session.
21. When the team submitted ____ (its / their) final list of players, it was clear that the members had acted as individuals and not as a group.

22. The director's technique is flawless though the supporting crew has failed in _____ (its / their) work.
23. After the committee have gone through the resolutions referred to _____ (them / it) and discussed the implications from various perspectives, the chairman will declare the final verdict.
24. Sheetal and Gauri ensured that they finished _____ (her / their) project well before the deadline.
25. Neither Shon nor Jai was able to figure out how to increase _____ (his or their) daily output.
26. Neither Swati nor her friends worried about _____ (her / their) declining savings.
27. The United States is proud of _____ (its / their) heritage.
28. *Memoirs of a Geisha* loses _____ (its / their) plot after a while.
29. The number of students that are developing anxiety is increasing _____ (its / their) ranks every year.
30. A number of citizens came forward to lend _____ (its / their) services to help the victims of the flood.

Directions: *Given below are some sentences. Read them carefully and identify the errors, if there are any, with respect to the use of pronouns.*

31. That news has lost much of their appeal after the arrest of the criminals.
32. Interestingly, a number of students were able to identify the knowledge he had gained from his experience.
33. Many a girl wishes to be swept off their feet.
34. This centre's geographic location is better than that of the centres of other countries in higher latitudes.
35. Neither the boss nor the employees did his job properly.

Directions: *Choose the correct word for each blank from the pair of words given in brackets.*

36. Since neither push nor shove _____ (make / makes) you feel or look your best, here are a few self-control strategies I've found to be useful.
37. Neither the boy nor his parents _____ (has / have) been seen in public since, leading to fears for their safety.
38. It's as if either she or I _____ (is / am) looking for an excuse to yell at each other now.
39. Anyone _____ (is / are) allowed to enter the park regardless of age.
40. During the period that the group is together, everybody _____ (is / are) expected to be fully committed to the common goals.

41. Nobody _____ (knows / know) everything, and nobody _____ (is / are) expected to be perfect.
42. One hundred and eighty seven miles _____ (is / are) a long way to go for a good fish supper.
43. Three hundred rupees _____ (is / are) a large sum to pay for this kind of cheap amusement.
44. The buttons, which are quite plain, are very cheap: twelve dozen _____ (costs / cost) five shillings.
45. Perhaps his means _____ (is / are) not very extensive, and will not admit of a very expensive outlay.
46. The annals of Roger of Hoveden _____ (provide / provides) an account of the battle of Gisors between Richard I of England and Philip Augustus of France, which took place in 1198.
47. Between 1400 and 1500 the premises _____ (was / were) expanded considerably to allow for a larger contingent of monks than the original dozen.
48. The trousers he was wearing last night _____ (was / were) tartan.
49. The nuptials _____ (was / were) solemnized with such demonstrations of joy that nothing else was discoursed of.
50. Some of the miscreants have been locked up in this prison since the early 1990s and none of them _____ (has / have) escaped.
51. When the students thought another student was having a fit, they became scared and none of them _____ (was / were) just apathetic or indifferent.
52. It appears that the jury _____ (has / have) reached a verdict regarding the recently released Jonah Hex movie.
53. The team _____ (are / is) trying their best to channel the frustrations into motivation and they still need time to gel.
54. It is not the tenants but the landlord who _____ (decide / decides) the monthly rent for the premises.
55. The team leader but not his team members _____ (is / are) entitled to the performance bonus that the company gives out quarterly.
56. In targeting the learned audience, it often happens that a large percentage of actual consumers _____ (is / are) overlooked.
57. A large percentage of the younger generation _____ (was / were) ignorant about India's flagship scientific programme on account of poor publicity.
58. One of the memories that _____ (stands / stand) out the most in my mind is related to something that happened to me in the fourth grade.
59. One of the major problems we have encountered here _____ (is / are) the inability of the authorities to modify their procedures to meet emergency conditions.
60. There _____ (is / are) no better way to solve this problem.
61. Here _____ (come / comes) the leaders of tomorrow!

62. _____ (do /does) your dog normally bark at all strangers?
63. Where _____ (is / are) the remaining pages of this novel?

THEORY

CLASS EXERCISE

PRACTICE EXERCISE

VA-3.2 | ANALOGY, FIB, CLOZE AND CONFUSABLE WORDS



Analogy

Analogy, in a narrower sense, are a test of vocabulary. In a broader sense, however, they test the ability to see relationships between the meanings of words. First, a pair of words is given. These words are related to each other in a certain manner. You have to spot this relationship accurately and identify, among the given words or word pairs, the ones that are similarly related. Thus:

Sample Question

TRUTH : FALSEHOOD :: VIRTUE : ?

- 1] Goodness 2] Vice 3] Altruism 4] Veracity

Here, you have to determine which of the given words has the same relationship to 'virtue', as 'truth' has to 'falsehood'. The surest way to do this is to first spot the relationship. Once you spot what the relationship is, (in this case, that of opposites) it becomes easy to note that the opposite of 'virtue' is 'vice', i.e. option [2]. Do not read the alternatives till you have first determined the relationship between the capitalized pair.

Some Common Relationships

1. Cause : Effect

LIQUOR : INTOXICATION

Liquor causes intoxication.

ZEALOT : COMMUNALISM

A zealot causes communalism to spread.

2. Object : Purpose

CORK : BOTTLE

A cork is used to close a bottle.

AWL : PIERCE

An awl is used to pierce things.

3. Part : Whole

BOOK : LITERATURE

A book is part of literature.

SHARD : POTTERY

A shard is a broken piece of pottery.

4. **Object and Action**

GUN : FIRE

You fire a gun.

TERM : COIN

You coin a term.

5. **Action and Object/Phenomenon**

EAT : FOOD

You eat food.

FOMENT: RIOT

You foment a riot, i.e. to instigate or stir up a riot.

6. **Synonyms**

SLIM : THIN

Thin is the synonym of slim.

INCARCERATE : IMPRISON

Imprison is the synonym of incarcerate.

7. **Antonyms**

RELIGIOUS : ATHEIST

A religious person believes in god, while an atheist is a non-believer. The pair is therefore antonymous.

CIRCUMLOCUTION : BREVITY

Circumlocution is an indirect or long way of saying something, while brevity is being brief. Thus, brevity is an antonym of circumlocution.

8. **Defining Characteristics**

JACKAL : SLY

A jackal has the characteristic of being sly.

GOURMAND : GLUTTON

A gourmand has the characteristic of being a glutton i.e. eating too much.

9. Class and Member

MAMMAL : MAN

Man comes under the class of mammals.

DOGGEREL : POEM

Doggerel is a type of poem that is poor in quality.

10. Mutated Synonyms

In Mutated Synonyms, the words are not purely synonymous. But they are mutated or subtly changed synonyms.

BRAINWAVE : INSPIRED

The exact synonym for brainwave would be inspiration. But in case of Mutated Synonyms, it is replaced with inspired. So, it reads 'a brainwave comes to a person who is inspired'.

CHURLISH : RUDENESS

The exact synonym of churlish is boorish, insolent or rude. But Mutated Synonyms has rudeness, the noun form rather than the adjective.

11. Mutated Antonyms

CESSATION : RESUME

The proper antonym of cessation would be renewal, which is a noun. But the Mutated Antonyms type of Analogies has resume which is a verb. So it reads 'cessation means not to resume'.

GULLIBLE : SOPHISTICATION

The antonym for gullible should be sophisticated. So, it reads, 'a gullible person is one lacking in sophistication'.

12. Manner and Activity

RAMBLE : SPEAK

Rambling is speaking in an incoherent manner.

GYRATE : DANCE

Gyrating is a manner of dancing in a rotating or swirling manner.

13. Action and Significance

BLUSH : EMBARRASSMENT

A blush signifies embarrassment.

GRIMACE : PAIN

A grimace is a facial distortion signifying pain.

14. **Worker and Creation**

COMPOSER : MUSIC

A composer creates a piece of music.

PERFORMER : TOCCATA

A performer composes a toccata (a type of musical composition) to exhibit his touch and technique.

15. **Worker and Workplace**

PRIEST : CHAPEL

The main workplace of a priest is the chapel.

SCULPTOR : ATELIER

The workplace of a sculptor is the atelier.

16. **Spatial Separation**

LADAKH : KANYAKUMARI

They are spatially separated so that they are at the extreme North and extreme South of India.

HEADING : FOOTNOTE

A heading is at the top of the page while a footnote is at the bottom of the page.

17. **Symbol and Quality**

WHITE : PEACE

White symbolizes peace.

SAFFRON : RENUNCIATION

Saffron is a symbol of renunciation.

18. **Degree**

COOL : COLD

Cold is of a higher degree than cool.

SIMMER : BOIL

Boil is a higher degree than simmer.

There can be many other relationships but these are the most commonly used in competitive exams.

Strategy to Tackle Analogies

1. Identify the link

Identify whether the type of relationship given in the stem is one of the standard links.

2. Paraphrase the relationship

Express the relationship in your own way using the fewest possible words and as precisely as possible. This is the most important step and has to be done whether the relationship is a standard link or not.

3. Eliminate the weak links

Substitute the words in the options into the sentence you have paraphrased to describe the relationship between the words in the stem. Eliminate the answer choices in which the links are unclear or indirect. Eliminate choices that do not exhibit the same relationship as the stem or cannot be expressed in exactly the same words as those in the stem.

Solved Example

TACITURN : SPEECH

- (1) abstruse : irony
- (2) credible : reason
- (3) ambiguous : nature
- (4) spartan : extravagance

1. Identify the Link

In order to identify the relationship between the two words one has to know the meanings of the two words given in the stem. TACITURN means uncommunicative or inclined to silence; speech is used for communication. This stem does not fall into the standard links. So the next step is the most crucial: defining the relationship.

2. Define the relationship

In order to avoid getting into a trap where more than one option seems correct, you have to define the relationship between the two words in exact and precise terms. The option where the words can be defined in the same manner is the correct option.

In this example the relationship can be defined in any of the following ways:

To be TACITURN is to use very little SPEECH; a TACITURN person is disinclined towards SPEECH. Always remember to choose the exact and precise way of defining the relationship.

3. Eliminate the weak links

Once you have defined the relationship, eliminate the incorrect options by:

- Substituting the words of each option in the defining statement.
- Eliminate options that do not fit into the defining statement, since they reflect weak links.
- Check if the statement holds true without exceptions.

Let us use the defining statement, *To be taciturn is to use very little speech*, and eliminate each option by substituting and checking.

(1) abstruse : irony

To be *abstruse* is to use very little *irony*. *Abstruse* means 'something that cannot be understood'; 'incomprehensible'. *Irony* is 'using words to convey the opposite meaning of the literal one'. Hence, option (1) is incorrect since to be *abstruse* does not imply using very little *irony*.

(2) credible : reason

To be *credible* is to use very little *reason*. *Credible* means 'believable'. Being *credible* does not imply using little *reason*. So option (2) is incorrect.

(3) ambiguous : nature

To be *ambiguous* is to use very little *nature*. *Ambiguous* means 'uncertain, lacking clarity or doubtful'; this has nothing to do with *nature*.

(4) spartan : extravagance

To be *spartan* is 'to use very little extravagance'. *Spartan* means 'simple and very basic limited to only what is necessary'; *extravagance* means 'lavishness'. Thus, to be *spartan* is to use very little *extravagance*. Hence, option (4) is correct.

Fill in the blanks

Fill in the blanks (FIB) questions have been a regular feature of management entrance exams to evaluate vocabulary. The purpose of these questions is to check how comfortable is a student with vocabulary and whether he/she possess the reasoning ability to check if the words needed to fill the blanks are compatible with the given sentence.

There are different types of FIB questions like –

- Single blank questions
- Double blank questions
- Cloze paragraph questions
- One word in multiple sentences

Every sentence contains hints that will help you to select the correct answer. Also pay attention to the logic and context of the sentence.

Confusing words

Confusing words are designed primarily to differentiate between two similar words. One needs to understand not only the meaning of similar sounding words but also usage of those words.

Sentence Completion

Almost all sentence completion stems (the part of the sentence excluding the blanks) can be divided into two parts. Each part will express a distinct division of the information and meaning given in the sentence as a whole. Your ability to successfully solve Sentence Completion questions will depend on your

- ability to identify the two distinct parts of the sentence
- ability to understand the relationship between the two parts
- ability to determine the relationship between the blank(s) and the rest of the sentence
- vocabulary

All sentences might not test all the abilities mentioned above to the fullest but they definitely test the first two ones. Let us look at how you can go about developing all of the abilities listed above, barring vocabulary, of course, for which you have to read extensively.

Identifying the Parts

Sample question

The recent discovery of contrary archaeological evidence, a palimpsest found at Oxyrhynchus, has led classical scholars of Greek myths to _____ long-held theories about the chronological evolution of Greek plays.

- (A) debunk (B) bolster (C) buttress (D) delineate (E) establish

The sample Sentence Completion question given above has two parts:

- I. The recent discovery of contrary archaeological evidence, the palimpsest found at Oxyrhynchus,
II. Has led Classical scholars of Greek myths to _____ long-held theories about the chronological evolution of Greek plays.

Part I talks about a type of discovery.

Part II talks about the effect of the discovery.

So the relationship between the two parts of the sentence is one of *Cause* and *Effect*. So by understanding the type of *cause* one can understand the type of *effect*. In this case the crux of the *effect* is the word that best fits into the *blank*.

So let us examine the *cause* or Part I.

*The recent discovery of **contrary** archaeological evidence, the palimpsest found at Oxyrhynchus,*

The key word in Part I of the stem that helps you to understand the *cause* is the word *contrary*. *Contrary* means *opposing or opposite*.

Now let us examine the *effect* of Part II.

has led classical scholars of Greek myths to _____ long-held theories about the chronological evolution of Greek plays.

What will be the *effect* of the discovery of opposing evidence on current theories? Current theories will be either strongly weakened or disproved.

So, the answer option must be the word that means 'disprove or strongly weaken'.

Options (B) and (C), *bolster* and *buttress* are incorrect since they mean *strengthen* or *support*.

Option (D), *delineate* is incorrect since it means *to trace the outline* or *sketch*.

Option (E), *establish* is incorrect since it does not mean *strongly weaken* or *disprove*.

Option (A), *debunk* is correct since it means *to disprove*

Understanding the relationship between the parts

There are some common words that can serve as **Key Words** to correctly identify the relationship between the two parts of a sentence completion stem.

The typical **Key Words** on Sentence Completion stems are: although, though, but, despite, however, since, thus.

The relationship between the two parts can be

- **Point-Counterpoint**

The two parts will be expressing information points of view that run counter to each other or oppose each other. Words like although, though, but, despite and however indicate that the two parts will have opposing pieces of information or pieces of information that will be contrary to each other.

Despite constantly being at the receiving end of critics' _____ articles for its triteness, popular art surprisingly continues to _____ audiences and set the cash registers ringing.

- (A) indifferent....inform
- (B) trenchant....mesmerize
- (C) evocative....win
- (D) impairing.....receive
- (E) intemperate...tantalize

The sentence clearly has two distinct parts, which are separated by the comma. The presence of the word despite suggests that the two parts will have points/information running counter to each other.

Part I: *Despite constantly being at the receiving end of critics' _____ articles for its triteness,*

This part talks about the critics writing articles for its (popular art's) triteness. *Trite* is used to refer to 'something that is boring or uninteresting because of being overused or repetitive'. Hence, critics' articles will obviously not be praising popular art but will be negative about it. The only word that fits is *trenchant* which means 'caustic or sharp or cutting'. *Impairing* meaning 'weakening' is close but not exact.

Part II: *popular art continues to _____ audiences and set the cash registers ringing.*

This part says that popular art is very successful commercially and _____ audiences.

The word *despite* means that the second part has opposing information with respect to the first. Hence, the audiences are not negative about popular art; they do not find it 'trite' and, make it commercially successful. So, the second blank should have a word that means the opposite of *trite*. The word that best fits the description is *mesmerize*, which means 'spellbinding or fascinating'.

Hence the correct option is (B)

- **Cause-Effect**

The two parts, as illustrated in the sample question discussed earlier, can have a cause-effect relationship. *Since* and *thus* indicate a *Cause and Effect* relationship between the two parts.

- **Complementary**

The two parts will be supporting/extending/emphasizing the same idea/information.

One statistic supporting the claim that our culture _____ psychological disorders, is the _____ of psychotherapy clinics across the country.

- (A) spawns.....dwindling
- (B) engenders.....burgeoning
- (C) inhibits.....outgrowth
- (D) condemns.....evolution
- (E) segregates.....multitude

Part I: *One statistic supporting the claim that our culture _____ psychological disorders,*

The first part of the sentence talks about a statistic supporting the claim about the relationship between our culture and psychological disorders.

Part II: *is the _____ of psychotherapy clinics across the country.*

The second part of the sentence highlights this statistic. So, it is extending the idea mentioned in the first part.

Since the second part deals with a statistic, the second blank should be a word that is related to numbers or quantity.

Option (D) is incorrect, since *evolution* is not related to numbers or quantity. It is a qualitative aspect.

Option (A) is incorrect, *spawns* means 'giving rise to' or 'causing' and *dwindling* means 'decreasing in number'; the decreasing number of psychotherapy clinics cannot support the claim that our culture gives rise to psychological disorders.

Options (C) and (E) are incorrect. Though the words for the second blank *outgrowth* and *multitude* denote increasing number, they do not support either claim that the culture *inhibits* and *segregates* psychological disorders.

Option (B) is correct. *Engenders* means 'giving birth/rise to', *burgeoning* means 'rapid growth'. The second part of the sentence now clearly supports the claim that our culture gives rise to psychological disorders

Note: The three types of relationships mentioned above are only the most commonly observed and classifiable relationships. You will be encountering 2-3 sentences that will not fall into any one of the three categories.

Also, the sentences will fall into one of the three categories even if there are no *Key Words*; they are just indicators and not a must.

Understanding the relationship between the blank(s) and the rest of the sentences

One-blank

In order to understand the relationship between the blank and the rest of the sentence one has to first have understood the relationship between the two parts. The relationship between the two parts and the positioning of the blank (the part in which the blank has been placed) usually gives you an accurate idea of the relationship between the blank and the rest of the sentence.

Example

Given the factious debate the bill has evoked both in the Senate as well as in the media, it will not be _____ to assume that it will not be passed.

- (A) far-fetched
- (B) impertinent
- (C) favourable
- (D) inadvertant
- (E) inopportune

Part I: Given the factious debate the bill has evoked both in the Senate as well as in the media,

The first part states that the bill has evoked a factious debate in the Senate and the media. Factious means causing a lot of dispute or fighting.

Part II: *it will not be _____ to predict that it will not be passed.*

The relationship between the two parts is that of Cause-Effect. The clue being the phrase, “given that”.

Given that the bill has caused a lot of dispute **it is logical to assume** that it will not be passed.

It is logical to assume is the same as *it is not illogical to assume*.

The second part of the sentence says it is not _____ to assume.

So the answer option should be closest in meaning to illogical. The only answer option is *far-fetched* which means ‘not deducible’ or ‘unimaginable’.

Meaning: In some cases the word in the blank means nothing but the rest of the sentence. In other words, the rest of the sentence is the meaning of the word in the blank.

Example 2

Studies have shown that vocational training during imprisonment has proven to be a completely futile method of reform in the case of _____ criminals who go back to their anti-social and criminal behavior despite repeated prison sentences.

- (A) experienced
- (B) juvenile
- (C) delinquent
- (D) recalcitrant
- (E) recidivist

In the above sentence refers to criminals to keep going back habitually to their criminal and anti-social behavior. Such a behavior is called *recidivism* and people who habitually relapse into crime are called *recidivists*.

Note: This might also happen in the case of some two-blank sentences also.

Two- Blanks

The relationship between the two blanks is also completely dependent on the relationship between the two parts. The relationship between the two parts as mentioned earlier can be *Point-Counter Point*, *Cause-Effect* or *Complementary*.

Strategy to solve Sentence Completion questions

1. **SPLIT:** Divide the sentence into two parts as per the two-part approach.
A useful guideline for splitting the sentence into two distinct information/thought groups is to use the punctuation marks like **commas, semicolons**. Both commas and semicolons are used to separate distinct information/thought groups. So, try and see if the sentence splits into two after a comma or a semicolon. Remember that a sentence might have more than one comma. It does not mean that you split the sentence into more than two parts.
2. **LINK:** Identify the link between the two parts of the sentence.
Establish the relationship between the two parts of the sentence. It can either belong to one of the 3 types, Point-Counter Point, Cause-Effect and Complementary or be a unique.
3. **SHADOW:** Frame a shadow word/phrase that fits into the blank
Based on the type of relationship between the parts, identify the relationship between the blank and the rest of the sentence or between the two blanks depending on whether it is a one-blank or two-blank sentence. Then frame a word/phrase that will best fit into the blank.
4. **ELIMINATE:** Eliminate words/sets of words that do not best fit into the blank
Look for the word/set of words that best capture the meaning of the shadow word/phrase. In case of two-blank sentence eliminate the option if one of the two-words does not fit into the blank. Do not waste your time with the checking the other word in the option.

SOLVED EXAMPLE

In every century there were philosophers devoted to the ideal of _____ disciplines with contradictory impulses such as science and art, art and religion, and evolving a single, _____ knowledge system.

- (A) synthesizing....complex
- (B) combining.....universal
- (C) reconciling.....harmonious
- (D) cloistering.....unified
- (E) amalgamating...elevated

1. SPLIT

The sentence has two parts. One part talks about dealing in some way with disciplines with contradictory impulses. The second talks about evolving a single knowledge system. You can split it by looking at the commas. The first comma is irrelevant to splitting because it is used to denote two successive examples. The second comma is the one that divides the sentence into two.

Part I: In every century there were philosophers devoted to the ideal of _____ disciplines with contradictory impulses such as science and art, art and religion,

Part II: and evolving a single, _____ knowledge system.

2. LINK

The two parts of the sentence are complementary. The second part extends the idea/thought expressed in the first.

3. SHADOW

The two parts are complementary so both the words should also be complementary.

Blank (i)

From the rest of the sentence we know that philosophers wanted to combine two different disciplines into one single knowledge system. The key word/phrase in the first part of the sentence is *contradictory* impulses; 'contradictory' means 'opposed or opposite to each other'. The first blank has to denote a word that means *to combine* or *bring together contradictory impulses*

Blank (ii)

So if one is aiming to build a system by mixing opposing elements then the two elements must be made to fit well together. The second blank then has to be a word that correctly defines the quality of *fitting or combining well together*.

4. ELIMINATE

Blank (i)

Cloistering means *covering* or *secluding* so it can be eliminated.

Synthesizing, *combining* and *amalgamating* all mean *combining* but not necessarily combining disparate elements.

Reconciling means *making disagreeing people/ideas compatible or settling differences*.

Option (C) best fits blank (i). The word for the second blank for in option (C) is *harmonious* which means 'a pleasant and appropriate fitting of components into a whole'.

Hence, option (C) is the best option.



CLASS EXERCISE

Directions: Identify the relationship between the words given in each question.

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. BERATE : REBUKE | 8. PALETTE : ARTIST |
| 2. BELIEVER : ATHEIST | 9. ALCOHOL : INEBRIATION |
| 3. EPHEMERAL : VANISH | 10. FOREST : SHADY |
| 4. SILO : GRAIN | 11. ISLAND : ARCHIPELAGO |
| 5. MILK : PROVISION | 12. CHAPTER : BOOK |
| 6. DRY : PARCHED | 13. SALT : PEPPER |
| 7. FOOLHARDY : CAUTION | 14. ORNITHOLOGIST : BIRDS |

Directions: In the following sentence parts of the sentence are left blank. Four different ways of completing the sentence are indicated. Choose the best alternative from among the four.

15. Their achievement in the field of literature is described as _____; sometimes it is even called _____. (Past CAT ques.)
- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1) magnificent; irresponsible | 2) insignificant; influential |
| 3) significant; paltry | 4) unimportant; trivial |

Directions: Each sentence in a question has a pair of highlighted words. From them, select the most appropriate words (A or B) to form correct sentences. The options indicate the words that may be selected to correctly complete the set of sentences. From them, choose the most appropriate one.

16. We reached the event late; **consequently (A) / subsequently (B)** we missed the opening act.
His humorous **anecdotes (A) / antidotes (B)** kept the audience entertained.
The lucrative job offer made by my current employers was the **principle (A) / principal (B)** reason I left my home-town all those years ago.
It was a **historic (A) / historical (B)** moment as the two countries signed an agreement to end decades of war and conflict in the region.
- | | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1) BAAA | 2) BABA | 3) AAAA | 4) AABA |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|
17. It was **immoral (A) / amoral (B)** of her to accept that bribe.
Being an **aural (A) / oral (B)** learner, he prefers audio books over the printed ones.
A great **ascetic (A) / aesthetic (B)**, St. Nil was the founder of several monasteries.
He was **credible (A) / credulous (B)** enough to believe her fantastical story.
- | | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1) BAAB | 2) ABAB | 3) AAAA | 4) AAAB |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|

18. He will accept the bribe; he has a reputation for being **venal (A)** / **venial (B)**.
The materials are dangerous because they are **inflammable (A)** / **non-flammable (B)**.
The author thanked his wife and children in the **foreword (A)** / **forward (B)**.
The gentlemen and the driver, encumbered by their long coats, were **floundering (A)** / **foun-dering (B)** helplessly in the water.
1) BABA 2) BAAA 3) AAAA 4) AABA
19. The governing board **comprises (A)** / **composes (B)** several members of the founding family.
If you **flaunt (A)** / **flout (B)** the house rules, you will be fined.
The intricate construction of the monument left him **amused (A)** / **bemused (B)**, as he un-successfully tried to figure out how it could have been built.
It was her **wont (A)** / **won't (B)** to carry her folder wherever she went.
1) BBBA 2) ABBA 3) ABAA 4) AABA
20. The **elusive (A)** / **allusive (B)** convict was finally apprehended after being on the run for several years.
The students were confused by the **ambivalent (A)** / **ambiguous (B)** wording of the question.
I **hanged (A)** / **hung (B)** the picture on my bedroom wall.
The thunder and **lightening (A)** / **lightning (B)** scared the little child.
1) ABBA 2) BBBB 3) AABBB 4) AABA

Direction: Each question below consists of a capitalized pair of words, followed by four pairs of words labelled [1] through [4]. Select the pair that best expresses a relationship similar to that expressed in the capitalized pair.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>21. CONCERN : APATHY
1) repulsion : affection
2) confession : accession
3) effervescence : enthusiasm
4) buoyancy : prerogative</p> | <p>22. PRUDISH : PROPER
1) boorish : dull
2) hostile : surly
3) fastidious : particular
4) jovial : happy</p> |
| <p>23. TREK : JOURNEY
1) ball : cricket
2) rule : game
3) campaign : election
4) jealousy : emotion</p> | <p>24. TRUCE : WAR
1) apathy : stolidity
2) acumen : perception
3) health : malady
4) impunity : exemption</p> |

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>25. MANDATORY : COMPLY
 1) command : obey
 2) forbidden : abstain
 3) tacit : approve
 4) abide : lawful</p> | <p>26. CELEBRATION : VICTORY
 1) cloud : rain
 2) house : construction
 3) defeat : despair
 4) mourning : death</p> |
| <p>27. FEAR : TERROR
 1) anxiety : worry
 2) negligence : carelessness
 3) ecstasy : joy
 4) tepid : hot</p> | <p>28. CONFESS : DENY
 1) royal : regal
 2) speak : hear
 3) release : imprison
 4) loud : audible</p> |
| <p>29. EYE : LIGHT
 1) hear : see
 2) brain : idea
 3) hand : fist
 4) ear : sound</p> | |

Directions: Carefully read the following passage and fill in the blanks meaningfully from the given options.

PASSAGE 1

Cigarette or beverage commercials are very efficient ways of ___30___ you with desires. They are not trying to ___31___ a message. If they did, they would probably choose a more efficient message than Real men smoke a certain brand of cigarette. Such commercials are trying to trigger desires in you, ___32___ your ___33___ mechanism, which is probably against smoking or consuming sugary beverages. And they do so very efficiently: even though you think that a certain brand of sugary beverage is very unhealthy and bad for you, if the commercial is well-done, it will ___34___ trigger a desire in you.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|--------------------|----------------|
| 30. A. infecting | B. inundating | C. instilling | D. encumbering |
| 31. A. prescribe | B. represent | C. moralise | D. communicate |
| 32. A. flipping | B. anticipating | C. pre-empting | D. bypassing |
| 33. A. detection | B. screening | C. arboreal | D. appraising |
| 34. A. although | B. maybe | C. notwithstanding | D. nonetheless |

PASSAGE 2

We achieve ersatz immortality by sacrificing ourselves to conquer an empire, to build a temple, to write a book, to establish a family, to accumulate a fortune, to further progress and prosperity, to create an information-society and global free market. Since the main task of human life is to become ___35___ and ___36___ death, every culture must provide its members with an intricate symbolic system that is covertly ___37___. This means that ___38___ conflicts between cultures are essentially battles between immortality projects, holy wars.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|----------------|--------------|--------------|
| 35. A. spiritual | B. heroic | C. celestial | D. wise |
| 36. A. transcend | B. anticipate | C. escape | D. belie |
| 37. A. authoritarian | B. officious | C. insidious | D. religious |
| 38. A. violent | B. ideological | C. symbolic | D. hysteric |

Directions: For the given word at the top of each table, match the dictionary definitions on the left (A, B, C, D) with their corresponding usage on the right (E, F, G, H). Out of the four possibilities given in the boxes below the table, select the one that has all the definitions and their usage correctly matched.

39. **FRET**

	Meaning		Usage
A	To feel or express worry or discontent	E	The sari border was a lovely fretted design.
B	To cause corrosion	F	The acid fretted through the wood, leaving a gaping hole.
C	To move in agitation or commotion	G	The waterfall – with the water leaping in a seething, fretting mass over the edge of the precipice – was an awe-inspiring sight
D	Interlaced angular design	H	Stop fretting - we will reach our destination soon.

1)

A	H
B	G
C	F
D	E

2)

A	H
B	F
C	G
D	E

3)

A	F
B	E
C	H
D	G

4)

A	F
B	H
C	E
D	G

40. **FLAG**

	Meaning		Usage
A	Piece of cloth attached by one end to a pole and used as a standard	E	The movie was so boring that barely twenty minutes into it, my interest flagged.
B	To become feeble or less intense	F	In spite of the late hour, we managed to flag down a taxi quite easily.
C	Flat paving stone	G	A country's flag can tell you a lot about that particular country.
D	To inform or signal	H	Varicoloured flags made up the path to the cottage.

1)

A	G
B	E
C	H
D	F

2)

A	H
B	F
C	G
D	E

3)

A	H
B	E
C	F
D	G

4)

A	G
B	F
C	H
D	E

41. **FREE**

	Meaning		Usage
A	At liberty; unrestricted	E	<i>Cadbury's</i> has come up with a new promotion scheme – a small toy free with every two bars of <i>Perk</i> .
B	Set at liberty; disentangle	F	After today's examination, we will be free for two whole months!
C	Not charged for	G	We got to the theatre so late that not a single seat remained free.
D	Not engaged, available	H	The police stormed in and freed the hostages.

1)

A	F
B	E
C	G
D	H

2)

A	H
B	G
C	E
D	F

3)

A	H
B	F
C	E
D	G

4)

A	F
B	H
C	E
D	G

42. **BLUFF**

	Meaning		Usage
A	Good-naturedly blunt, outspoken	E	He is such a glib talker, he can bluff his way out of anything.
B	Steep cliff	F	When we called his bluff, he just panicked and ran.
C	To mislead by display of false strength or confidence	G	Being situated on the edge of a sheer bluff, the house had a splendid view of the country side.
D	An act or instance of misleading	H	I like Uncle Sunil – he is nice, though a little bluff.

1)

A	E
B	G
C	F
D	H

2)

A	H
B	G
C	E
D	F

3)

A	F
B	H
C	E
D	G

4)

A	G
B	F
C	H
D	E

43. **AIR**

	Meaning		Usage
A	A mixture of gases (especially oxygen) required for breathing	E	I agree that he is a genius, but why does he have to constantly air his superior knowledge?
B	To expose to fresh air, ventilate	F	We aired out all the mattresses for Diwali cleaning.
C	Melody	G	A change of air ought to do you good.
D	To show off	H	She can play some lovely Irish airs on the piano.

1)

A	G
B	E
C	H
D	F

2)

A	F
B	G
C	H
D	E

3)

A	G
B	F
C	H
D	E

4)

A	F
B	H
C	E
D	G

Directions: In each question, the word at the top of the table is used in four different ways, numbered 1 to 4. Choose the option in which the usage of the word is incorrect or inappropriate.

44. **EXTRACT**

1)	The Reading Comprehension passage consists of an extract from a new best-selling novel.
2)	My favourite book has been extracted in this newspaper article.
3)	We had to take my little brother to the doctor to get the pencil that he had stuck into his ear extracted.
4)	The cake needs a little more vanilla extract.

45. **BUSINESS**

1)	My future plans are none of your business.
2)	Business has been quite good today in spite of the <i>bandh</i> .
3)	His business and energy made me feel ashamed of my indolence.
4)	The business of the day concluded, we all adjourned to the dining room.

46. **LAY**

1)	The <i>Lay of Leithian</i> is one of the central tales in Tolkien's mythology.
2)	It is so subtle that a lay person would not be able to tell the difference.
3)	The problem lay in the fact that he was completely unused to this type of life-style.
4)	The house lays in a beautiful, sheltered hollow.

47. **OFFENSE**

1)	I am very sorry; I did not mean to offense you.
2)	As it was his first offense, the judge let him off with a warning.
3)	"Offense is better than defense" is his usual strategy.
4)	Our team has built up a powerful offense – they are certain to win this time.

48. **DATE**

1)	I am nervous about my date with my dentist tomorrow.
2)	Which date is your birthday – next Monday or Tuesday?
3)	Do you remember the date on which this event occurred?
4)	I really like this new date-flavoured ice-cream.



PRACTICE EXERCISE-1

Directions: *In each question, a word has been used in the given sentences in four different ways. Choose the option corresponding to the sentence in which the usage of the word is incorrect or inappropriate.*

1. **SET**

- 1) I set about cleaning the place as soon as she left.
- 2) The sun is about to set in her illustrious career.
- 3) They set out to find a resting place.
- 4) We set off on a journey that would change our lives forever.

2. **LIE**

- 1) In Africa we have to lie hands on only one interest, the agricultural interest.
- 2) The complete responsibility and full authority for the event lies with the manager.
- 3) I am aware of the problems that lie ahead.
- 4) I am going to lie in today instead of going to work.

3. **BREAK**

- 1) We want to start a new PR campaign for our break away company.
- 2) Some people find it extremely difficult to break free from their addictions.
- 3) I don't know what caused their break-up.
- 4) I don't want our car to break down in the middle of nowhere.

4. **FELL**

- 1) You need a strong axe to fell that tree.
- 2) In this book he recounts vividly how he fell afoul with the law.
- 3) He fell over while trying to attempt an audacious manoeuvre.
- 4) The brothers fell out over their father's will.

5. **HELD**

- 1) He held off the competition to win his first Olympic gold medal.
- 2) She was held back by her husband, who asked her to calm down.
- 3) Your actions were annoying but he never held them against you.
- 4) She is so held up in her own anxieties that she is inattentive to our needs.

Directions: In each of the questions, a word has been used in the given sentences in four different ways. Choose the option corresponding to the sentence in which the usage of the word is incorrect or inappropriate.

6. **BEAR**

- 1) The reports bear up all my initial fears and misgivings.
- 2) You have to bear with me while I try to fix the car.
- 3) I can't bear this pain anymore.
- 4) Whenever I visit the zoo, I fear that the leopard would bear down on me at a frightening speed.

7. **CALLED**

- 1) His boss called him down for his negligence and irresponsibility.
- 2) The committee has called him in to hear his side of the story.
- 3) He called on me during his last visit.
- 4) I couldn't attend your wedding because I was called off by the army.

8. **CUT**

- 1) The company cut back on the bonuses as it struggled to stay afloat during the recession.
- 2) Your speech is too long; you have to cut it down.
- 3) With his frail physique, he wasn't exactly cut out for the army.
- 4) He has cut himself from the rest of the world.

9. **KNOCKED**

- 1) He was knocked out by the punch.
- 2) I was knocked over by a car as I tried to cross the road.
- 3) He knocked on quite a few cities before settling down in Mumbai.
- 4) The stamp collection was knocked down for a ridiculously small amount.

10. **PICKED**

- 1) I was picked on due to my small size.
- 2) I picked up this habit while holidaying in America.
- 3) After her husband's death she picked herself up and got on with her life.
- 4) As an infant I always picked out my mother's earrings.

Directions: In the given passages, a word/ group of words is kept blank. Choose the word/ group of words that most appropriately completes the passage.

PASSAGE 1

The stories of love we find on the silver screen are not just ___11___ of the emotions within us. They also shape our expectations of what love will be like – expectations by which we will want to ___12___, leading us to ___13___ our feelings into that exalted form. Just a few centuries ago, romance held a much less ___14___ position in the cultural imaginary than it does today: love was primarily a question of family allegiances and controlled reproduction. This changed with the advent of modernity, where romantic love acquired the ___15___ acclaim that it commands today. And if the nature of love has changed before, it can change again.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|---------------|--------------|
| 11. A. clarifications | B. introspections | C. portrayals | D. betrayals |
| 12. A. appraise | B. test | C. resist | D. abide |
| 13. A. rationalise | B. idealise | C. coerce | D. cajole |
| 14. A. dominant | B. germane | C. urbane | D. essential |
| 15. A. necessary | B. lavish | C. cultural | D. political |

PASSAGE 2

Fascist politics seeks to ___16___ the relations of mutual respect between citizens that are the ___17___ of a healthy liberal democracy, replacing them ultimately with ___18___ in one figure alone, the leader. When fascist politics is at its most ___19___, the leader is regarded by the followers as singularly ___20___.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|
| 16. A. encourage | B. cultivate | C. destroy | D. retract |
| 17. A. origins | B. foundation | C. bane | D. heritage |
| 18. A. faith | B. hatred | C. dedication | D. worship |
| 19. A. successful | B. positive | C. progressive | D. optimistic |
| 20. A. unproductive | B. obligatory | C. trustworthy | D. mysterious |

PASSAGE 3

In a large company, ___21___ people is about as common as using a gun or a switch-blade to ___22___ an argument. As a result, most managers have little or no experience of firing people, and they find it emotionally traumatic; as a result, they often delay the act interminably, much as an unhappy spouse will prolong a bad marriage. And when the firing is done, it's often done clumsily, with far worse side-effects than are necessary. Do the world-class software organisations have a different way of firing people? No, but they do the deed swiftly, humanely, and professionally. The key point here is to view the fired employee as a 'failed product' and to ask how the process ___23___ such a phenomenon in the first place.

(Past CAT questions)

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|-----------|----------------|
| 21. 1) dismissing | 2) punishing | 3) firing | 4) admonishing |
|-------------------|--------------|-----------|----------------|

22. 1) resolve 2) thwart 3) defeat 4) close
23. 1) derived 2) engineered 3) produced 4) allowed

Directions: In each question, there are four sentences. Each sentence has pairs of words/phrases that are italicized and highlighted. From the italicized and highlighted word(s)/phrase(s), select the most appropriate word(s)/phrase(s) to form correct sentences. Then, from the options given, choose the best one. **(Past CAT questions)**

24. The cricket council that **was [A] / were [B]** elected last March **is [A] / are [B]** at sixes and sevens over new rules.

The critics **censored [A] / censured [B]** the new movie because of its social unacceptability.

Amit's explanation for missing the meeting was **credulous [A] / credible [B]**.

She coughed **discreetly [A] / discretely [B]** to announce her presence.

- 1) BBAAA 2) AAABA 3) BBBBA 4) AABBA 5) BBBA

25. The **further [A] / farther [B]** he pushed himself, the more disillusioned he grew.

For the crowds it was more of a **historical [A] / historic [B]** event; for their leader, it was just another day.

The old man has a healthy **distrust [A] / mistrust [B]** for all new technology.

This film is based on a **real [A] / true [B]** story.

One suspects that the **compliment [A] / complement [B]** was backhanded.

- 1) BABAB 2) ABBBA 3) BAABA 4) BBAAB 5) ABABA

26. **Regrettably [A] / Regretfully [B]** I have to decline your invitation.

I am drawn to the poetic, **sensual [A] / sensuous [B]** quality of her paintings.

He was **besides [A] / beside [B]** himself with rage when I told him what I had done.

After brushing against a **stationary [A] / stationery [B]** truck my car turned turtle.

As the water began to rise **over [A] / above [B]** the danger mark, the signs of an imminent flood were clear.

- 1) BAABA 2) BBBAB 3) AAABA 4) BBAAB 5) BABAB

Directions: In question given below there are two statements, each statement consists of two blanks. You have to choose the option which provides the correct set of words that fits both the blanks in both the statements appropriately and in the same order making them meaningful and grammatically correct. **(Past CAT questions)**

27.

- 1) While 'silver bullets' that can cure most of our dreaded diseases have not been found, _____ about the potential of human-genome research to yield medical breakthroughs has arisen from _____ expectations.
- 2) _____ is no more logically justified than the standard _____ optimism and it might reflect a lack of truly comparative thinking.
 - 1) hope, scientific 2) optimism, realistic 3) diffidence, unreasonable
 - 4) pessimism, unrealistic 5) optimism, unreasonable

28.

- 1) In all _____ regimes even the slightest whisper of dissent provoked savage _____ from the regime.
- 2) After the world war the one- party system and _____ dictatorship of the proletariat evolved. Political _____, the hindering of the church and the leader's, Rákosi's personality cult followed.
 - 1) democratic, retaliation 2) ancient, rituals 3) totalitarian, reprisal
 - 4) liberal, welcome 5) democratic, appraisal

Directions: Each of the following questions has a paragraph with one italicised word that does not make sense. Choose the most appropriate replacement for the word from the options given below the paragraph. **(Past CAT questions)**

29. Intelligent design derives from an early 19th-century explanation of the natural world given by an English clergyman, William Paley. Paley was the populariser of the famous watchmaker analogy. Proponents of intelligent design are **crupping** Paley's argument with a new gloss from molecular biology.
 - 1) destroying 2) testing 3) resurrecting 4) questioning
30. It is **klang** to a sensitive traveler who walks through this great town, when he sees the streets, the roads, and cabin doors crowded with beggars, mostly women, followed by three, four, or six children, all in rage and importuning every passenger for alms.
 - 1) amusing 2) irritating 3) disgusting 4) distressing

31. Or there is the most **fingummy** diplomatic note on record: when Philip of Macedon wrote to the Spartans that, if he came within their borders, he would leave not one stone of their city; they wrote back one word – “If”.

1) witty 2) rude 3) simple 4) terse

Directions: In each of the following sentences, parts of the sentence are left blank. Beneath each sentence, four different ways of completing the sentence are indicated. Choose the best alternative from among the four. **(Past CAT questions)**

32. But _____ are now regularly written not just for fools, but for well-established practices, organisations and institutions, not all of which seem to be _____ away.

1) reports, withering 2) stories, trading
3) books, dying 4) obituaries, fading

33. The Darwin who _____ is most remarkable for the way in which he _____ the attributes of the world class thinker and head of the household.

1) comes, figures 2) arises, adds
3) emerges, combines 4) appeared, combines

34. Since her face was free of _____ there was no way to _____ if she appreciated what had happened.

1) make-up, realise 2) expression, ascertain
3) emotion, diagnose 4) scars, understand

35. In this context, the _____ of the British labour movement is particularly _____.

1) affair, weird 2) activity, moving
3) experience, significant 4) atmosphere, gloomy

Directions: For each of the words below, a contextual usage is provided. Pick the word from the alternatives provided that is most inappropriate in the given context. **(Past CAT questions)**

36. SPECIOUS: A **specious** argument is not simply a false one but one that has the ring of truth.

1) Deceitful 2) Fallacious 3) Credible 4) Deceptive

37. OBVIATE: The new mass transit system may **obviate** the need for the use of personal cars.

1) Prevent 2) Forestall 3) Preclude 4) Bolster

38. DISUSE: Some words fall into **disuse** as technology makes objects obsolete.
1) Prevalent 2) Discarded 3) Obliterated 4) Unfashionable
39. PARSIMONIOUS: The evidence was constructed from very **parsimonious** scraps of information.
1) Frugal 2) Penurious 3) Thrifty 4) Altruistic
40. FACETIOUS: When I suggested that war is a method of controlling population, my father remarked that I was being **facetious**.
1) Jovian 2) Jovial 3) Jocular 4) Joking

Directions: This question consists of two capitalized words that have a certain relationship to each other, followed by a certain pair of words. Choose the pair that is *RELATED* to each other in the same way as the capitalized pair. **(Past CAT Questions)**

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 41. DOCTOR : DISEASE | 42. BIRD : ORNITHOLOGY |
| 1) Policeman : Criminal | 1) Zoology : Animal |
| 2) Dentist : Drill | 2) Stars : Galaxy |
| 3) Politician : Electorate | 3) Archaeology : Antiquity |
| 4) Teacher : Ignorance | 4) Plants : Botany |
| 43. FOOD : HUNGER | 44. SPEAR : DART |
| 1) Sleep : Weariness | 1) Knife : Sword |
| 2) Night : Slumber | 2) Door : Window |
| 3) Dream : Sleep | 3) Mountain : Molehill |
| 4) Thirst : Drink | 4) Cannon : Gun |
| 45. BUILDING : BRICK | |
| 1) Lime : Cement | |
| 2) Highway : Asphalt | |
| 3) River : Bridge | |
| 4) Vehicle : Road | |

Directions: In each of the questions, a word has been used in the given sentences in four ways. Choose the option corresponding to the sentence in which the usage of the word is incorrect or inappropriate.

46. **MARK**
- 1) He overstepped the mark by insulting my family.
 - 2) His criticisms were ill informed and way off the mark.
 - 3) He failed because his efforts were not up to the mark.
 - 4) He got on the mark with his first shot of the game.

47. **EASY**

- 1) The painting was garnering rave reviews; most people found it to be easy on the eye.
- 2) The doctor advised him to take off easy and cut back on his hectic schedule.
- 3) Even a kid can use this gadget; it is as easy as pie.
- 4) He expected the jury to go easy on him, but they handed out a long sentence.

48. **HOME**

- 1) The presentation was okay – nothing to write home about.
- 2) The excitement among the team members rose as the project entered the home stretch.
- 3) I have just one more assignment to finish and then I'll be home to dry.
- 4) She used graphics to drive home her message.

49. **LOOSE**

- 1) Be careful of him, he plays fast and loose.
- 2) They had one final meeting to tie up the loose ends.
- 3) Their loose fielding cost them the game.
- 4) I had absolutely nothing to do that day, I was a loose end.

50. **GREEN**

- 1) Suresh is a green horn; he still has to learn a lot before he can be considered for the crucial posting in the company.
- 2) I don't have the green thumb required to maintain this garden.
- 3) He was green with envy when he saw my new watch.
- 4) After a long a wait, the stalled project was finally given the green light by the authorities.

Directions: In each of the following questions, a related pair of words or phrases is followed by four pairs of words or phrases. Select the pair from the options that best expresses a relationship similar to that expressed in the original pair.

51. ENTOMOLOGIST : INSECT

- 1) semanticist : thought
- 2) linguist : references
- 3) geologist : countries
- 4) philologist : texts

52. JOG : SPRINT

- 1) trot : gallop
- 2) slip : glide
- 3) walk : strut
- 4) jump : dive

53. ANIMALS : TETHER

- 1) birds : nest
- 2) fish : aquarium
- 3) ships : moor
- 4) horses : stable

54. GAUCHE : TACT

- 1) adroit : finesse
- 2) morbid : directness
- 3) novice : experience
- 4) conceited : knowledge

55. PUGILIST : PUNCH
1) skier : flow
2) oarsman : glide
3) athlete : leap
4) wrestler : grapple

Directions: *In each of the questions, a word has been used in the given sentences in four different ways. Choose the option corresponding to the sentence in which the usage of the word is incorrect or inappropriate.*

56. **BROUGHT**

- 1) The people responsible for this heinous crime will be brought to book.
- 2) The change in his attitude was brought about by her intervention.
- 3) Suddenly, he brought forward a contradictory opinion in the meeting.
- 4) Difficult situations always brought up the best in him.

57. **CARRY**

- 1) Carry out my orders or face the consequences!
- 2) At the beginning of the war, many citizens of our country believed we could carry the day.
- 3) You will have to carry on the business once I'm gone.
- 4) I don't want our private problems to carry off into our professional life.

58. **TURNED**

- 1) The public had to be turned away as there were no tickets.
- 2) I think I will put down my book and turned off for the night.
- 3) The dog turned on him and bit him.
- 4) He has put his petulant ways behind him and has now turned over a new leaf.

59. **DO**

- 1) If you would do well to your staff, they will serve you loyally.
- 2) I just can't do without my cola.
- 3) We should do away with these unnecessarily tedious procedures.
- 4) Taking a few days off will do you a world of good.

60. **CRY**

- 1) My new penthouse is a far cry from the modest apartment I grew up in.
- 2) The workers raised a hue and cry about the company's decision to reduce their wages.
- 3) She was there for me when I needed a shoulder to cry on.
- 4) He had to cry up to be heard above the sound of the waves.



PRACTICE EXERCISE-2

Directions: In each of the questions, a word has been used in the given sentences in four different ways. Choose the option corresponding to the sentence in which the usage of the word is incorrect or inappropriate.

1. ACCOUNT

- 1) She was called to account for being late.
- 2) He appears to be innocent, by all accounts.
- 3) The skipper missed the match on account of his injury.
- 4) He changed the date of the wedding of his own account.

Directions: For the given word at the top of each table, match the dictionary definitions on the left (A, B, C, D) with their corresponding usage on the right (E, F, G, H). Out of the four possibilities given in the boxes below the table, select the one that has all the definitions and their usage correctly matched.

2. LEAN

	Meaning		Usage
A	Not productive or prosperous	E	The prophecy was of seven lean years when no crops would grow.
B	Containing little excess or waste	F	It is a lean budget, but one that will impel the nation forward
C	To have a tendency or preference	G	He leans towards obesity, so it is best to control his eating habits now itself.
D	To rely for assistance or support	H	She leaned on the crutches heavily, but managed to move across the room.

1)

A	F
B	G
C	E
D	H

2)

A	F
B	E
C	H
D	G

3)

A	F
B	G
C	H
D	E

4)

A	E
B	F
C	G
D	H

3. TRAIN

	Meaning		Usage
A	A line of railway cars joined together and drawn by a locomotive	E	In short, if I follow the same train of thought as you, I too will be able to figure out who the murderer is.
B	Piece of cloth forming the long back section of a gown that is drawn along the floor	F	The trains are always so late that if they ran on time one day, commuters would shocked senseless.
C	Prepare (someone) for a future role or function	G	Nineteenth century formal dresses had such long trains that women had to hold their end up in one hand while dancing in order to avoid tripping over them.
D	Sucession or series of persons, things or ideas	H	The captain wants to train each and every one of the new recruits himself.

1)

A	F
B	G
C	E
D	H

2)

A	F
B	E
C	H
D	G

3)

A	F
B	G
C	H
D	E

4)

A	E
B	F
C	G
D	H

Directions: In each question, the word at the top of the table is used in four different ways, numbered 1 to 4. Choose the option in which the usage of the word is incorrect or inappropriate.

4. SHOOT

1	Bamboo shoots and leaves can be quite tasty.
2	It is quite a common sight here to see that small child shooting down the street with his mother running after him shouting.
3	Shoot only with cameras, not with guns
4	The doctor says that this type of gun shoot wound is usually fatal.

Directions: In the following questions, for each of the words below a context is provided. From the alternatives given pick the word or phrase that is closest in meaning in the given context. **(Past CAT questions)**

5. OPPROBRIUM: The police officer appears oblivious to the **opprobrium** generated by his blatantly partisan conduct.
- 1) Harsh criticism 2) Acute distrust
3) Bitter enmity 4) Stark oppressiveness

6. PORTEND: It appears to many that the US 'war on terrorism' **portends** trouble in the Gulf.
1) Introduces 2) Evokes 3) Spells 4) Bodes
7. PREVARICATE: When a video tape of her meeting was played back to her and she was asked to explain her presence there, she started **prevaricating**.
1) Speaking evasively 2) Speaking violently
3) Lying furiously 4) Throwing a tantrum
8. RESTIVE: The crowd became **restive** when the minister failed to appear even by 10 p.m.
1) Violent 2) Angry 3) Restless 4) Distressed
9. OSTENSIBLE: Manohar's **ostensible** job was to guard the building at night.
1) Apparent 2) Blatant 3) Ostentatious 4) Insidious

Directions: In each of the following sentences, parts of the sentence are left blank beneath each sentence, four different ways of completing the sentence are indicated. Choose the best alternative from among the four. **(Past CAT questions)**

10. The British retailer, M&S, today formally _____ defeat in its attempt to _____ King's, its US subsidiary, since no potential purchasers were ready to cough up the necessary cash.
1) admitted, acquire 2) conceded, offload
3) announced, dispose 4) ratified, auction
11. Early _____ of maladjustment to college culture is _____ by the tendency to develop friendship networks outside college which mask signals of maladjustment.
1) treatment, compounded 2) detection, facilitated
3) identification, complicated 4) prevention, helped
12. The _____ regions of Spain all have unique cultures, but the _____ views within each region make the issue of an acceptable common language of instruction an even more contentious one.
1) different, discrete 2) distinct, disparate
3) divergent, distinct 4) different, competing
13. A growing number of these expert professionals _____ having to train foreigners as the students end up _____ the teachers who have to then unhappily contend with no jobs at all or new jobs with drastically reduced pay packets.
1) resent, replacing 2) resist, challenging
3) welcome, assisting 4) are, supplanting

14. Companies that try to improve employees' performance by _____ rewards encourage negative kinds of behaviour instead of _____ a genuine interest in doing the work well.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1) giving, seeking | 2) bestowing, discouraging |
| 3) conferring, discrediting | 4) withholding, fostering |

Directions: The question has a sentence/paragraph with two underlined words that do not make sense. Choose the most appropriate replacement for the words from the options given. **(Past CAT questions)**

15. In texts that are written according to this view, the **gerontological** alchemical symbols, diagrams, and textual imagery of late alchemical works typically contain multiple layers of meanings, allegories, and references to other equally cryptic works; and must be laboriously 'decoded' in order to discover their **positron** meaning.

- | | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1) cryptic, inferred | 2) cryptic, true | 3) ambiguous, phaneritic |
| 4) apocryphal, esoteric | 5) perplexing, plain | |

Directions: This question consists of two capitalized words that have a certain relationship to each other, followed by a certain pair of words. Choose the pair that is NOT RELATED to each other in the same way as the capitalized pair. **(Past CAT Questions)**

16. COSMIC : UNIVERSE

- 1) Terrestrial : Earth
- 2) Lunar : Moon
- 3) Connubial : Youth
- 4) Annular : Ring

17. CANINE : DOG

- 1) Feline : Cat
- 2) Aquiline : Parrot
- 3) Serpentine : Cobra
- 4) Vulpine : Fox

18. XENOPHOBIA : FOREIGNERS

- 1) Claustrophobia : Height
- 2) Anglophobia : Englishmen
- 3) Bibliophobia : Book
- 4) Hemophobia : Blood

Directions: This question consists of two capitalized words that have a certain relationship to each other, followed by a certain pair of words. Choose the pair that is RELATED to each other in the same way as the capitalized pair. **(Past CAT Questions)**

19. ACTION : REACTION

- 1) Introvert : Extrovert
- 2) Assail : Defend
- 3) Diseased : Doctor
- 4) Death : Treatment

20. MALAPROPISM : WORDS

- 1) Anachronism : Time
- 2) Ellipsis : Sentence
- 3) Jinjanthropism : Apes
- 4) Catechism : Religion

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>21. SALT : SALTY</p> <p>1) Sugar : Sweet</p> <p>2) Cow : Bovine</p> <p>3) Bitter : Sour</p> <p>4) Taste : Flavour</p> | <p>22. DIVIDE : UNITE</p> <p>1) Split : Apart</p> <p>2) Marriage : Divorce</p> <p>3) Fission : Fusion</p> <p>4) Chasm : Gap</p> |
| <p>23. CRIME : PUNISHMENT</p> <p>1) Lawyer : Judge</p> <p>2) Court : Room</p> <p>3) Accused : Defendant</p> <p>4) Homicide : Penalty</p> | <p>24. NUTS : BOLTS</p> <p>1) Nitty : Gritty</p> <p>2) Bare : Feet</p> <p>3) Naked : Clothed</p> <p>4) Hard : Soft</p> |
| <p>25. JUST : ARBITRARY</p> <p>1) Order : Chaos</p> <p>2) Bare : Clothed</p> <p>3) Hope : Surprise</p> <p>4) Improper : Proper</p> | <p>26. HOROLOGY : TIME</p> <p>1) speleology : caves</p> <p>2) entomology : books</p> <p>3) meteorology : meteors</p> <p>4) psephology : limbs</p> |
| <p>27. OENOPHILE : WINE</p> <p>1) harpsichord : music</p> <p>2) gourmet : food</p> <p>3) equestrian : horse</p> <p>4) technician : science</p> | <p>28. DISUNITED : IRRECONCILABLE</p> <p>1) hungry : ravenous</p> <p>2) peaceful : comatose</p> <p>3) fatal : viable</p> <p>4) slow : slothful</p> |
| <p>29. INFECTED : QUARANTINE</p> <p>1) sedated : anesthetize</p> <p>2) rusted : oxidize</p> <p>3) ill : hospitalize</p> <p>4) sun : tan</p> | <p>30. BURLESQUE : VULGARIZES</p> <p>1) dirge : eulogizes</p> <p>2) caricature : berates</p> <p>3) tirade : denounces</p> <p>4) limerick : criticizes</p> |
| <p>31. OSTRACISM : SOCIETY</p> <p>1) resignation : job</p> <p>2) expulsion : school</p> <p>3) migration : country</p> <p>4) odyssey : nation</p> | <p>32. GLUTTON : ABSTEMIOUS</p> <p>1) virago : affable</p> <p>2) misanthrope : cynical</p> <p>3) symphony : dulcet</p> <p>4) ensemble : eclectic</p> |
| <p>33. SOMATIC : BODY</p> <p>1) corvine : epoch</p> <p>2) ambidextrous : hands</p> <p>3) noetic : mind</p> <p>4) sebaceous : glands</p> | <p>34. TOADY : OBSEQUIOUS</p> <p>1) dilettante : proficient</p> <p>2) seditionist : factious</p> <p>3) demagogue : arbitrary</p> <p>4) sybarite : parsimonious</p> |
| <p>35. SCABBARD : SWORD</p> <p>1) wood : door</p> <p>2) cushion : pin</p> <p>3) hair : head</p> <p>4) road : pavement</p> | <p>36. COLLOCUTOR : CONVERSATION</p> <p>1) inspector : insurance</p> <p>2) thespian : play</p> <p>3) detective : mystery</p> <p>4) parliamentarian: resolution</p> |

Directions: In the following sentences, parts of the sentences are left blank. Four different ways of completing the sentences are indicated. Choose the best alternative from among the four.

37. This simplified _____ to the decision-making process is a must read for anyone _____ important real estate, personal, or professional decisions.
- 1) primer, maximizing 2) tract, enacting
3) introduction, under 4) guide, facing
38. Physicians may soon have _____ to help paralysed people move their limbs by bypassing the _____ nerves that once controlled their muscles.
- 1) instruments, detrimental 2) ways, damaged
3) reason, involuntary 4) impediments, complex
39. The Internet is a medium where users have nearly _____ choices and _____ constraints about where to go and what to do.
- 1) unbalanced, nonexistent 2) embarrassing, no
3) unlimited, minimal. 4) choking, shocking

Directions: This question consists of two capitalized words that have a certain relationship to each other, followed by a certain pair of words. Choose the pair that is *RELATED* to each other in the same way as the capitalized pair. **(Past CAT Questions)**

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 40. LYING : PERJURY | 41. PREHISTORIC : MEDIEVAL |
| 1) Statement : Testimony | 1) Akbar : British |
| 2) Seeing : Observing | 2) Present : Future |
| 3) Taking : Stealing | 3) Shakespeare : Tennyson |
| 4) Eating : Dining | 4) Colossus : Elephant |
| 42. LOUD : STENTORIAN | 43. LIMPID : MURKY |
| 1) Mild : Noisy | 1) Dazed : Clouded |
| 2) Painful : Prickly | 2) Obscure : Vague |
| 3) Adjective : Descriptive | 3) Bright : Gloomy |
| 4) Bright : Resplendent | 4) Nebulous : Dim |
| 44. EASE : ALLEVIATE | |
| 1) Hint : Allocative | |
| 2) Revolt : Repudiate | |
| 3) Collapse : Rise | |
| 4) Question : Interrogate | |

Directions: This question consists of two capitalized words that have a certain relationship to each other, followed by a certain pair of words. Choose the pair that is *RELATED* to each other in the same way as the capitalized pair. **(Past CAT Questions)**

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>45. SECRET : CLANDESTINE</p> <p>1) Overt : Furtive</p> <p>2) Covert : Stealthy</p> <p>3) Open : Closed</p> <p>4) News : Rumour</p> | <p>46. DRAMA : AUDIENCE</p> <p>1) Brawl : Vagabonds</p> <p>2) Game : Spectators</p> <p>3) Art : Critics</p> <p>4) Movie : Actors</p> |
| <p>47. BUILDING : STOREY</p> <p>1) Book : Chapter</p> <p>2) Sentence : Adjective</p> <p>3) Tree : Stem</p> <p>4) Elephant : Tusk</p> | |

Directions: This question consists of two capitalized words that have a certain relationship to each other, followed by a certain pair of words. Choose the pair that is *NOT RELATED* to each other in the same way as the capitalized pair. **(Past CAT Questions)**

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>48. GERMANE : PERTINENT</p> <p>1) Apt : Appropriate</p> <p>2) Quick : Urgent</p> <p>3) Dull : Sluggish</p> <p>4) Excited : Serene</p> | <p>49. SAIL : SHIP</p> <p>1) Propeller : Aeroplane</p> <p>2) Radar : Satellite</p> <p>3) Hydrogen : Balloon</p> <p>4) Accelerator : Car</p> |
|--|---|

Directions: In the given passage, a word is kept blank. Choose the word that most appropriately completes the passage.

Large ___50___ gains are realized through a “demographic dividend” when a county’s working age population is ___51___ than the population that is ___52___.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| 50. A. penurious | B. economical | C. economic | D. accounting |
| 51. A. more active | B. larger | C. contented | D. smaller |
| 52. A. young | B. liberated | C. dependent | D. productive. |



PRACTICE EXERCISE-3

Directions: In each of the sentences, part/s of the sentences are left blank. Below each sentence, four different ways of completing the sentence are indicated. Choose the word or set of words for each blank that best fits the meaning of the sentence as a whole.

1. Since the Internet environment is so much larger than anything else, some people get “stuck” in the _____ stage for a longer period of time than is _____ for getting used to new technologies, products, or services.

1) standardisation, necessary	2) adaptation, quintessential
2) modification, exceptional	4) acclimation, typical

2. Unlike the tiger, the leopard is, to a certain extent, a _____ and becomes a man-eater by acquiring a taste for human flesh when there is a _____ strength of herbivores.

1) scavenger, depleted	2) hunter, excessive
3) combatant, surfeit	4) carnivorous, increased

3. The ability to focus on one task is undoubtedly useful, but focus also _____ awareness.

1) expands	2) improves	3) limits	4) eliminates
------------	-------------	-----------	---------------

4. In this rapidly evolving and highly _____ marketplace of ideas, ranging from the sophisticated to the wacky, the ability to argue and _____ has become critically important.

1) competitive, emulate	2) dispersed, persuade
3) complex, connect	4) enriching, promote

Directions: Carefully read the following passage and fill the blanks meaningfully from the given options.

PASSAGE 1

The government's __ (5) __ with setting targets is well known. So is its enthusiasm for the internet. But the two do not seem to be mixing well. It will require “a miracle” for the government to meet its own deadline for getting all of its services online, according to one of the officials involved in the __ (6) __. Steve Marsh of the Office of the e-Envoy told an e-government conference last month that so far about 70% of government services can be accessed via the internet. That figure is expected to __ (7) __ only 80% by the end of 2005, the date by which everything was supposed to have been “e-enabled”.

While this is __ (8) __ for the government, it is hardly the end of the world. Britain is unusual in having set explicit targets for making all government services available electronically. What is far more worrying is that where such services have already been put online, hardly anyone seems to be using them. Usage of e-government services has not grown in the past two years, and has even __ (9) __ in some cases.

- | | | | | |
|----|-----------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|
| 5. | 1) destruction | 2) obsession | 3) phobia | 4) difficulty |
| 6. | 1) initiative | 2) aggression | 3) industry | 4) maneuver |
| 7. | 1) attain | 2) extend | 3) arrive | 4) reach |
| 8. | 1) embarrassing | 2) burdensome | 3) disadvantageous | 4) insulting |
| 9. | 1) fallen | 2) augmented | 3) vanished | 4) increased |

PASSAGE 2

One look at India's roads explains why this country moves forward so __ (10) __. No longer does anyone laugh at this tired joke. John F. Kennedy once said "It is not __ (11) __ that built our roads but roads that built our wealth". In a country __ (12) __ but still largely unconnected, and where trucks limp to their destinations on __ (13) __ highways at 28 kmph, it has finally been acknowledged with the recent announcement that the private sector can build and __ (14) __ roads.

- | | | | | |
|-----|-------------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| 10. | 1) slowly | 2) rapidly | 3) vastly | 4) much |
| 11. | 1) roads | 2) we | 3) God | 4) wealth |
| 12. | 1) well-developed | 2) large | 3) backward | 4) scattered |
| 13. | 1) super | 2) double | 3) so-called | 4) poor |
| 14. | 1) rebuild | 2) maintain | 3) tar | 4) operate |

Directions: Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word.

15. When I come face to face with you, we _____ in a very special manner.
1) pass 2) collide 3) communicate 4) stand
16. There was a lot of weaving back and forth, yet, _____, no re-writing of language, no dithering over adjectives.
1) why 2) strangely 3) understandably 4) there is

17. The _____ is that flopping on your bed after meals does not mean instant entry into 'fatdom'.
 1) surprise 2) strenuous bit 3) fishy part 4) good news
18. Without proper knowledge, power is null and void. Be aware, be alert - that's _____ of the hour.
 1) the need 2) the time 3) the power 4) the importance
19. Each report starts with a statement from the directors summarising the growth pattern of the organisation over the past year and outlines the company's _____.
 1) future prospects 2) plans 3) ideas and ideals 4) associates
20. Our new house is _____ insured against all damages.
 1) fully 2) apparently 3) tightly 4) sufficiently
21. The problems in her married life _____ insurmountable.
 1) looked 2) felt 3) appeared 4) payed
22. The local government did not permit foreign countries to intervene _____ in its internal affairs.
 1) military 2) militarily 3) militant 4) militia
23. The weather is _____ mild for this time of the year.
 1) quite 2) measurably 3) seasonally 4) economically
24. Hundreds of people _____ from the border to escape terrorism.
 1) fled 2) flew 3) fled 4) fled
25. The jury told him to stop prevaricating because they were _____ of his statements.
 1) irritated 2) sceptical 3) acerbic 4) intransigent
26. He was accused of _____ because he had not paid his taxes.
 1) audacity 2) hypocrisy 3) infraction 4) insurgency
27. The President described the series of bomb blasts as a _____ act.
 1) judicious 2) lavish 3) barbaric 4) deriding

28. He _____ praised all his students in front of the inspector.
1) forcefully 2) highly 3) fervently 4) incredibly
29. There is a _____ amount of oil in the vial.
1) negligible 2) few 4) sporadic 4) tiny

Directions: Each question below consists of a capitalized pair of words, followed by four pairs of words labelled (1) through (4). Select the pair that best expresses a relationship similar to that expressed in the capitalized pair.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>30. FISSURE : CHASM
1) ridge : range
2) coast : plain
3) trickle : torrent
4) deluge : downpour</p> | <p>31. ABBREVIATE : BRIEF
1) vindicate : vindictive
2) instantiate : instant
3) aggravate : grave
4) supplicate : supple</p> |
| <p>32. RUN : SPRINT
1) encompass : envelope
2) decorate : vandalize
3) repeat : resume
4) dislike : loathe</p> | <p>33. ARMS : GUN
1) garment : shirt
2) red : colors
3) hammer : tools
4) sleep : yawn</p> |
| <p>34. ADULTERATE : FOOD
1) evaporate : milk
2) concentrate : juice
3) intoxicate : alcohol
4) contaminate : water</p> | <p>35. IMPOSTOR : IDENTITY
1) counterfeiter : bullion
2) forger : document
3) martyr : sacrifice
4) militant : campaign</p> |
| <p>36. INTOXICANT : INEBRIATION
1) preservative : amalgamation
2) appetizer : digestion
3) lubricant : mechanization
4) disinfectant : germicide</p> | <p>37. INFILTRATION : ESPIONAGE
1) arson : sabotage
2) suspension : camouflage
3) affiliation : administration
4) orientation : technology</p> |

Directions: For the word given at the top of each table, match the dictionary definitions on the left (A, B, C, D) with their corresponding usage on the right (E, F, G, H). Out of the four possibilities given in the boxes below the table, select the one that has all the definitions and their usages matched right.

38. **EXCEED**

	Dictionary Definition		Usage
A	To extend outside of or enlarge beyond – used chiefly in physical phenomena.	E	The mercy of God exceeds our finite minds.
B	To be greater than or superior to	F	Their accomplishments exceeded our expectation.
C	Be beyond the comprehension of	G	He exceeded his authority when he paid his brother's gambling debts with money from the trust.
D	To go beyond a limit set by (as an authority or privilege)	H	If this rain keeps up, the river will exceed its banks by morning.

1)

A	H
B	F
C	E
D	G

2)

A	H
B	E
C	F
D	G

3)

A	G
B	F
C	E
D	H

4)

A	F
B	G
C	H
D	E

(Past CAT question)

39. **INFER**

	Dictionary Definition		Usage
A	To derive by reasoning or implication	E	We see smoke and infer fire.
B	To surmise	F	Given some utterance, a listener may infer from it all sorts of things which neither the utterance nor the utterer implied.
C	To point out	G	I waited all day to meet him. From this you can infer my zeal to see him.
D	To hint	H	She did not take part in the debate except to ask a question inferring that she was not interested in the debate.

1)

A	G
B	E
C	H
D	F

2)

A	F
B	H
C	E
D	G

3)

A	H
B	G
C	E
D	F

4)

A	E
B	F
C	G
D	H

(Past CAT question)

40. **MELLOW**

	Dictionary Definition		Usage
A	Adequately and properly aged so as to be free of harshness	E	He has mellowed with age.
B	Freed from the rashness of youth	F	The tones of the old violin were mellow.
C	Of soft and loamy consistency	G	Some wines are mellow.
D	Rich and full but free from stridency	H	Mellow soil is found in the Gangetic plains.

1)

A	E
B	G
C	H
D	F

2)

A	E
B	F
C	G
D	H

3)

A	G
B	E
C	H
D	F

4)

A	H
B	G
C	F
D	E

(Past CAT question)

41. **RELIEF**

	Dictionary Definition		Usage
A	Removal or lightening of something distressing	E	A ceremony follows the relief of a sentry after the morning shift.
B	Aid in the form of necessities for the indigent	F	It was a relief to take off the tight shoes.
C	Diversion	G	The only relief I get is by playing cards.
D	Release from the performance of duty	H	Disaster relief was offered to the victims.

1)

A	F
B	H
C	E
D	G

2)

A	F
B	H
C	G
D	E

3)

A	H
B	F
C	G
D	E

4)

A	G
B	E
C	H
D	F

(Past CAT question)

42. PURGE

	Dictionary Definition		Usage
A	Remove a stigma from the name of	E	The opposition was purged after the coup.
B	Make clean by removing whatever is superfluous, foreign	F	The committee heard his attempt to purge himself of a charge of heresy.
C	Get rid of	G	Drugs that purge the bowels are often bad for the brain.
D	To cause evacuation of	H	It is recommended to purge water by distillation.

1)

A	E
B	G
C	F
D	H

2)

A	F
B	E
C	H
D	G

3)

A	H
B	F
C	G
D	E

4)

A	F
B	H
C	E
D	G

(Past CAT question)
43. MEASURE

	Dictionary Definition		Usage
A	Size or quantity found by measuring	E	A measure was instituted to prevent outsiders from entering the campus.
B	Vessel of standard capacity	F	Sheila was asked to measure each item that was delivered.
C	Suitable action	G	The measure of the cricket pitch was 22 yards.
D	Ascertain extent or quantity	H	Ramesh used a measure to take out one litre of oil.

1)

A	H
B	F
C	E
D	G

2)

A	G
B	E
C	F
D	H

3)

A	G
B	H
C	E
D	F

4)

A	F
B	H
C	E
D	G

44. **BOUND**

	Dictionary Definition		Usage
A	Obliged, constrained	E	Dinesh felt bound to walk out when the discussion turned to kickbacks.
B	Limiting value	F	Buffeted by contradictory forces he was bound to lose his mind.
C	Move in a specified direction	G	Vidya's story strains the bounds of credulity.
D	Destined or certain to be	H	Bound for a career in law, Jyoti was reluctant to study Milton.

1)

A	F
B	H
C	G
D	E

2)

A	E
B	G
C	H
D	F

3)

A	E
B	H
C	F
D	G

4)

A	F
B	G
C	E
D	H

45. **CATCH**

	Dictionary Definition		Usage
A	Capture	E	All her friends agreed that Prasad was a good catch.
B	Grasp with the senses or the mind	F	The proposal sounds very good but where is the catch?
C	Deception	G	Hussian tries to catch the spirit of India in this painting.
D	Thing or person worth trapping	H	Sorry, I couldn't catch you.

1)

A	H
B	F
C	E
D	G

2)

A	F
B	G
C	E
D	H

3)

A	G
B	F
C	E
D	H

4)

A	G
B	H
C	F
D	E

46. **DEAL**

	Dictionary Definition		Usage
A	Manage, attend to	E	Dinesh insisted on dealing the cards.
B	Stock, sell	F	This contract deals with handmade cards.
C	Give out to a number of people	G	My brother deals in cards.
D	Be concerned with	H	I decided not to deal with handmade cards.

1)

A	H
B	F
C	E
D	G

2)

A	F
B	G
C	E
D	H

3)

A	G
B	F
C	E
D	H

4)

A	G
B	H
C	F
D	E

47. **TURN**

	Dictionary Definition		Usage
A	Give new direction to	E	It was now his turn to be angry.
B	Send	F	Leena never turned away a beggar.
C	Change in form	G	Ashish asked Laxman to turn his face to the left.
D	Opportunity coming successively for each person	H	The old school building has been turned into a museum.

1)

A	H
B	E
C	F
D	G

2)

A	G
B	F
C	E
D	H

3)

A	G
B	E
C	F
D	H

4)

A	G
B	F
C	H
D	E

Directions: In each question, the given word is used in four different ways, numbered (1) to (4). Choose the option in which the usage of the word is incorrect or inappropriate.

48. **BUNDLE**

- 1) The newborn baby was a bundle of joy for the family.
- 2) Mobile operators are offering a bundle of additional benefits.
- 3) He made a bundle in the share market.
- 4) It was sheer luck that brought a bundle of boy-scouts to where I was lying wounded.

49. **DISTINCT**

- 1) He is distinct about what is right and what is wrong.
- 2) Mars became distinct on the horizon in the month of August.
- 3) The distinct strains of Ravi's violin could be heard above the general din.
- 4) Ghoshbabu's is a distinct case of water rising above its own level.

50. **IMPLICATION**

- 1) Everyone appreciated the headmaster's implication in raising flood relief in the village.
- 2) This letter will lead to the implication of several industrialists in the share market scam.
- 3) Several members of the audience missed the implication of the minister's promise.
- 4) Death, by implication, is the only solution the poem offers the reader.

51) **HOST**

- 1) If you host the party, who will foot the bill?
- 2) Kerala's forests are host to a range of snakes.
- 3) Ranchi will play the host to the next national film festival.
- 4) A virus has infected the host computer.

52) **SORT**

- 1) What sort of cheese do you use in pizza?
- 2) Farmers of all sort attended the rally.
- 3) They serve tea of a sort on these trains.
- 4) Let's sort these boys into four groups.

Directions: In each question, the word at the top of the table is used in four different ways. Choose the option in which the usage of the word is incorrect or inappropriate.

53) **HELP**

1)	This syrup will help your cold.
2)	I can't help the colour of my skin.
3)	Ranjit may help himself with the beer in the fridge.
4)	Do you really expect me to help you out with cash?

54) **PAPER**

1)	Your suggestions look great on the paper, but are absolutely impractical.
2)	Do you know how many trees are killed to make a truckload of paper?
3)	So far I have been able to paper over the disagreements among my brothers.
4)	Dr. Malek will read a paper on criminalisation of politics.

55. SERVICE

1)	Customers have to service themselves at this canteen.
2)	It's a service lift: don't get into it.
3)	I'm not making enough even to service the loan.
4)	Jyoti's husband has been on active service for three months.

56. **REASON**

1)	Your stand is beyond all reason.
2)	Has she given you any reason for her resignation?
3)	There is little reason in your pompous advice.
4)	How do you deal with a friend who doesn't listen to a reason?

Directions: In the following sentences, parts of the sentences are left blank. Four different ways of completing the sentences are indicated. Choose the best alternative from among the four.

57. The best punctuation is that of which the reader is least conscious; for when punctuation, or lack of it, _____ itself, it is usually because it _____.
1) obtrudes, offends
2) enjoins, fails
3) conceals, recedes
4) effaces, counts
58. The argument that the need for a looser fiscal policy to _____ demand outweighs the need to _____ budget deficits is persuasive.
1) assess, minimize
2) outstrip, eliminate
3) stimulate, control
4) restrain, conceal
59. The Athenians on the whole were peaceful and prosperous; they had _____ to sit at home and think about the universe and dispute with Socrates, or to travel abroad and _____ the world.
1) leisure, explore
2) time, ignore
3) ability, suffer
4) temerity, understand
60. From the time she had put her hair up, every man she had met had grovelled before her and she had acquired a mental attitude toward the other sex which was a blend of _____ and _____.
1) admiration, tolerance
2) indifference, contempt
3) impertinence, temperance
4) arrogance, fidelity



PRACTICE EXERCISE-4

Directions: Fill in the blanks with the appropriate option.

1. Rama took a long time to _____ the trauma.
1) get through 2) get together 3) get herself in 4) get off
2. The traders _____ expecting the Sensex to cross the 10,000 mark before the market closes today.
1) would have been 2) have being 3) were 4) are
3. The clarification of the statement made by the Prime Minister ____ only yesterday.
1) will come 2) had come 3) was coming 4) has been coming
4. Increasing demand for hashish, and attractive profits have prompted suppliers to _____.
1) slow down cultivation 2) start using the substance themselves
3) fund drug rehabilitation centers 4) increase cultivation of hashish
5. Experiments in even the clearest science are _____.
1) not credible 2) experiments 3) clear 4) open to interpretation
6. Most cliches, even the much stereotyped ones, contain _____.
1) only lies 2) objectivity
3) a grain of truth 4) subjectivity
7. The trick involved in any attempt to create an _____ of three dimensions when only two are present is well-known.
1) extra 2) image 3) angle 4) illusion
8. It is the _____, after all, who see the dawn at the end of a long, dark night.
1) weathermen 2) optimists 3) instruments 4) planets
9. The premiere show will _____ with the awards function taking place on the same day.
1) tie down 2) tie up 3) tie in 4) tie off

10. The enthusiasm of the contestant _____ due to lack of encouragement.
1) panned out 2) put out 3) pulled down 4) petered out

Directions: *In each of the sentences, part/s of the sentences are left blank. Below each sentence, four different ways of completing the sentence are indicated. Choose the word or set of words for each blank that best fits the meaning of the sentence as a whole.*

11. My last visit to Balmenach was a good many years ago but it was an occasion of some merriment. I had given advance notice of my intended visit and, _____ speaking, the red carpet was out for me. I had an interesting tour noticing the changes since my previous visit and halfway through I had the _____ pleasure of running into a female cousin of mine.
1) non-literally, startling 2) emblematically, abrupt
3) symbolically, surprising 4) metaphorically, unexpected
12. Biomedicine helps regulate and control one type of _____, namely, sickness and is one of the basic holistic devices that _____ and assures the well-being of man.
1) deviance, integrates 2) mutation, interpolates
3) malady, incorporates 4) dexterity, enmeshes
13. Ayurveda is a medical system comprising the _____ of life's harmony and addresses the _____ of an individual's physical, emotional, and spiritual balance.
1) wholeness, dimensions 2) naturalness, ambit
3) entirety, possibilities 4) ensemble, ranges
14. Anarchistic comedies of the 1930s _____ the social order and celebrated the creativity and impulsiveness of their protagonists in a form of clowning that ultimately _____ the status quo.
1) angered, enabled 2) challenged, reprobated
3) mocked, re-established 4) amplified, recommenced
15. It seems _____ that the U.S. is going to have to live with a faster pace of nuclear proliferation. Despite "arms control", both North Korea and Iran have been able to develop nuclear weapons on the _____.
1) inevitable, sly 2) absurd, warfront
3) unusual, sleuth 4) certain, clandestine

16. When presentations and comments are stiff and prepackaged, they signal that the whole meeting has been carefully _____ and orchestrated.
1) organized 2) scripted 3) manoeuvred 4) amalgamated
17. In view of the unresponsiveness of the defendants, the _____ of court procedures and the _____ prospects of victory, Mr. Chen also went to Beijing, as petitioners have done for centuries.
1) graveness, undue 2) slowness, dim
3) swiftness, bright 4) prolonging, glaring
18. Faced with a promising opportunity and _____ time in which to act, executives cannot wait until the opportunity is evaluated as part of the next annual planning cycle, so they _____ the deal and make a quick decision.
1) enormous, strike 2) paucity, analyze
3) constrained, finalize 4) limited, assess
19. In a Western setting, it seems that a central aspect of being a fan of someone or something always means being hungry for more of the same — it is not enough simply to be satisfied with what's already out there, and what originally made the fan become a fan, but there is a nearly _____ hunger for continuous _____ of one's reasons for being a fan, through new products.
1) aghast, asseveration 2) insatiable, reaffirmation
3) fake, pronouncement 4) indelible, declaration
20. This _____ the rise of fundamentalism and intolerance _____ by selfish groups and power-hungry politicians all over the world.
1) spreads, banned 2) stops, criticised
3) highlights, fanned 4) covers up, publicised

Directions: Each question below consists of a capitalized pair of words, followed by four pairs of words labelled [1] through [4]. Select the pair that best expresses a relationship similar to that expressed in the capitalized pair.

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 21. INFALLIBLE : DEFEAT | 22. ACCUMULATE : ASSETS |
| 1) incorrigible : reform | 1) associate : partners |
| 2) irascible : temper | 2) congregate : mobs |
| 3) inimitable : triumph | 3) annotate : footnotes |
| 4) contemptible : discipline | 4) aggravate : agitators |

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>23. MINISTER : DEFROCK</p> <p>1) moderator : screen</p> <p>2) arbitrator : settle</p> <p>3) president : oust</p> <p>4) executor : implement</p> | <p>24. CENSOR : EXPURGATE</p> <p>1) contractor : depreciate</p> <p>2) actuary : assess</p> <p>3) undertaker : propose</p> <p>4) surveyor : preview</p> |
| <p>25. ABROGATE : TREATY</p> <p>1) bequeath : legacy</p> <p>2) balk : risk</p> <p>3) cauterize : wound</p> <p>4) breach : contract</p> | <p>26. AQUILINE : EAGLE</p> <p>1) saurian : lizard</p> <p>2) rangy : wolf</p> <p>3) terrestrial : insect</p> <p>4) crustacean : spider</p> |
| <p>27. MORTGAGE : PROPERTY</p> <p>1) ingrain : harvest</p> <p>2) engage : franchise</p> <p>3) pawn : jewellery</p> <p>4) embroil : surcharge</p> | <p>28. IMPROMPTU : SPONTANEITY</p> <p>1) glamorous : exactitude</p> <p>2) perceptive : conscience</p> <p>3) peripheral : centrality</p> <p>4) hesitant : indecision</p> |
| <p>29. SINE QUA NON : ESSENTIAL CONDITION</p> <p>1) carpe diem : daily wage</p> <p>2) caveat emptor : foolish person</p> <p>3) alma mater : motherly love</p> <p>4) persona non grata : unwelcome person</p> | |

Directions: In each question, the word at the top of the table is used in four different ways, numbered (1) to (4). Choose the option in which the usage of the word is incorrect or inappropriate.

30. **FALLOUT**

- 1) Nagasaki suffered from the fallout of nuclear radiation.
- 2) People believed that the political fallout of the scandal would be insignificant.
- 3) Who can predict the environmental fallout of the WTO agreements?
- 4) The headmaster could not understand the fallout of several of his good students at the public examination.

31. **HAND**

- 1) I have my hand full, I cannot do it today.
- 2) The minister visited the jail to see the breach at first hand.
- 3) The situation is getting out of hand here!
- 4) When the roof of my house was blown away, he was willing to lend me a hand.

32. **NEAR**

- 1) I got there just after you left – a near miss!
- 2) She and her near friend left early.
- 3) The war led to a near doubling of oil prices.
- 4) They came near to tears seeing the plight of the victims.

Directions: Four statements with blanks have been given. These statements are followed by four alternatives. Choose the one which fits into the set of statements the maximum number of times.

33.

- A. People sensed _____.
 - B. A bad _____ case had come in – a person with a smashed arm.
 - C. And then, without warning, _____ struck.
 - D. The dogs were the first to recognise the signs of oncoming _____.
- 1) tragic 2) accident 3) disastrous 4) calamity

34.

- A. The men there had fought _____ and emotional withdrawal, and were more capable of helping Jim.
 - B. But _____ does occasionally afflict all the adults.
 - C. A person who is deeply hurt feels very _____.
 - D. It is hard to survive this feeling of _____.
- 1) dejection 2) lonely 3) trouble 4) depression

35.

- A. Professional studies have become the _____ of the rich.
 - B. Every citizen has the _____ to speak, travel and live as he pleases.
 - C. He has a definite _____ over all his rivals.
 - D. Sharon no longer has the _____ of the company's bungalow and car.
- 1) advantage 2) privilege 3) right 4) concession

36.

- A. I have the power of _____.
 - B. Down with a very high fever, he suffers from frequents fits of _____.
 - C. They are now bitter enemies – all because of a small _____.
 - D. Her _____ is the most creative thing she has ever possessed.
- 1) illusion 2) imagination 3) hallucination 4) misunderstanding

37.

- A. Communism states that every individual must live for the _____.
 B. The _____ of the affairs of the nation is deplorable.
 C. _____ have been laid down by the United States: states *The Statesman*.
 D. No _____ has succeeded in gaining complete autonomy from the Federal government.
 1) state 2) nation 3) government 4) conditions

Directions: Each question below consists of a capitalized pair of words, followed by four pairs of words labelled (1) through (4). Select the pair that best expresses a relationship similar to that expressed in the capitalized pair. **(Past CAT Questions)**

38. ATMOSPHERE : STRATOSPHERE

- 1) Nimbus : Cloud
 2) Instrument : Calibration
 3) Aircraft : Jet
 4) Climate : Rain

39. FOOD : GOURMET

- 1) Book : Critic
 2) Art : Connoisseur
 3) Sports : Fan
 4) Craft : Skill

40. NORTH : SOUTH

- 1) Black : White
 2) Yellow : Orange
 3) Red : Maroon
 4) Red : Indigo

41. BRAND : PRODUCT

- 1) Dalda : Rath
 2) Aircraft : Flying Machine
 3) Shoes : Reebok
 4) Ferrari: Sports car

42. DROUGHT : FAMINE

- 1) Poverty : Plenty
 2) Drip : Fluid
 3) Camera : Film
 4) Training : Skill

43. ANTERIOR : POSTERIOR

- 1) In : Out
 2) Top : Bottom
 3) Head : Tail
 4) Front : Rear

44. BARGE : VESSEL

- 1) Shovel : Implement
 2) Book : Anthology
 3) Rim : Edge
 4) Training : Preparation

45. LOVE : AFFECTION

- 1) Happiness : Joy
 2) Amity : Harmony
 3) Enemy : Hatred
 4) Sorrow : Misery

46. PARADIGM : PATTERN

- 1) Skeleton : Flesh
 2) Method : System
 3) Plant : Genus
 4) Dinosaur : Tyrannosaurus

47. PEEL : PEAL

- 1) Coat : Rind
 2) Laugh : Bell
 3) Rain : Reign
 4) Brain : Cranium

PRACTICE EXERCISE-5

Directions: Fill in the blanks with the appropriate option.

1. She was very patient with me and ____ all the steps until we reached a resolution.
- 1) walked me in 2) walked me through
3) walked me across 4) walked me from
2. Ravi was busy _____ for the interview next week.
- 1) sprucing in 2) sprucing out
3) sprucing up 4) sprucing through

Directions: In each of the sentences, part/s of the sentence is/are left blank. Below each sentence, four different ways of completing the sentence are indicated. Choose the word or set of words for each blank that best fits the meaning of the sentence as a whole.

3. The skyline in Hong Kong is dramatic with skyscrapers along the coast vying with the plush villas on the slopes of the hills - the ultra modernity _____ with the old world rusticity of Kowloon.
- 1) enhancing 2) encroaching upon
3) conflating perfectly with 4) contrasting starkly
4. As successive Indian governments have realized over the decades since 1947, in keeping with thoughtful policy makers elsewhere, the acquisition of learning and innovation can empower societies _____ periods of economic wealth and social cohesion.
- 1) to put in reverse gear 2) to fall back upon
3) to leapfrog into 4) to embark
5. Mandelbrot's new geometry mirrors a universe that is rough, not rounded, _____, not smooth; it is a geometry of the pitted, _____ and broken up, the twisted, tangled and intertwined.
- 1) salacious, rutted 2) scabrous, pocked
3) serrated, tousled 4) squalid, tainted
6. For a great part of his adult life he had been a metropolitan police magistrate, and in that capacity once fined me five pounds for a mere light-hearted _____ on Boat Race Night, when a mild _____ would more than have met the case.
- 1) infraction, chide 2) atrocity, chagrin
3) iniquity, reproof 4) peccadillo, reprimand

7. The seventeenth-century view of the scientist was different from the one that prevails today, when he or she who discovers some particularly _____ aspect of nature is hailed as clever or _____.
- 1) recondite, ingenious 2) erudite, sanctimonious
3) obtuse, sagacious 4) abstruse, ingenuous

Directions: Each sentence in a question has a pair of highlighted words. From them, select the most appropriate words (A or B) to form correct sentences. The options indicate the words that may be selected to correctly complete the set of sentences. From the options given, choose the most appropriate one.

8. The Prime Minister's **discreet (A) / discrete (B)** silence on the subject was criticised by the press.

I was **uninterested (A) / disinterested (B)** in sitting through her dour speech.

He was **restive (A) / restful (B)** throughout the meeting and could not wait for it to end.

The accused made an **impassioned (A) / a dispassionate (B)** plea for a reduced sentence, asking the jury to take his old age into account.

- 1) BABA 2) BBBA 3) AAAA 4) AABA

9. Somewhere above, in the silent house, Mr. Hyde was sulkily **dissembling (A) / disassembling (B)**.

I forgave his **official (A) / officious (B)** concern for once, but cautioned him in severe terms for making me the subject of idle conversation.

I want to study there because it is among India's most **reputable (A) / reputed (B)** institutes.

There is a **distinct (A) / clear (B)** scar across his face, which makes him hard to miss, even in a large crowd.

- 1) AAAA 2) BBAA 3) ABAA 4) ABBA

10. He has a crude, **earthy (A) / earthly (B)** sense of humour.

The expansion plans had to be shelved by the company in light of the new, more **economical (A) / economic (B)** spending policy.

The playmaker's **feint (A) / faint (B)** completely wrong-footed the defender.

After completing their education here, many Indian students **emigrate (A) / immigrate (B)** to the US.

- 1) BAAB 2) AABB 3) ABAB 4) AAAB

11. He needs to **exorcise (A) / exercise (B)** those demons and forget his tainted past.
The film is tautly directed, and the **forbidding (A) / foreboding (B)** sense of tension is ever relentless.
I was **fortuitous (A) / fortunate (B)** enough to find my credit card in the same place where I had left it.
The crowd was mesmerised and **captivated (A) / captured (B)** by his magical performance.
1) ABAA 2) ABBA 3) ABAB 4) BBBA

12. Unless we notice a **drastic (A) / dramatic (B)** improvement in your performance, we're not going to extend your contract.
As was her **wont (A) / want (B)**, she kept all of us in the dark about her intentions.
We got along quite well despite the fact that our opinions on the subject **varied (A) / differed (B)**.
I have to **device (A) / devise (B)** a plan to try and get the jury to vote in my favour.
1) BABB 2) AB BB 3) BBBB 4) AAB B

13. The **ceremonial (A) / ceremonious (B)** headgear was used as a symbol of kingship.
I find her **childish (A) / child-like (B)** behaviour very annoying.
If he asks me to do tedious work, I'm going to **demure (A) / demur (B)**.
His reckless behaviour is a **classic (A) / classical (B)** case of sparing the rod and spoiling the child.
1) BABA 2) AABA 3) ABBA 4) AAB B

14. He was **baited (A) / bated (B)** by the thug into a bar fight.
The value of the rupee has **deprecatd (A) / depreciated (B)** over the years.
A test win abroad **eluded (A) / alluded (B)** the Indian Team for more than a decade.
The quiz club gathers on **alternate (A) / alternative (B)** Thursdays.
1) BBAA 2) ABAB 3) ABBA 4) ABAA

15. His observations were **apposite (A) / opposite (B)** to the discussion.
I couldn't help but marvel at the **enormity (A) / enormousness (B)** of the Eiffel Tower.
She has been a **complacent (A) / complaisant (B)** child and has never troubled her parents.
You have to **alter (A) / altar (B)** your ways if you want to do well in this company.
1) BBBA 2) BABA 3) ABBA 4) BAAA

16. **Archaic (A) / Arcane (B)** methods of agriculture are being replaced by the latest technology.
Not wanting a repeat of the previous year's **rout (A) / route (B)**, the captain asked his team members to believe in themselves.
He does not **practice (A) / practise (B)** law despite holding a degree from one of the country's most prestigious law schools.
To **farther (A) / further (B)** strengthen his case, he presented a fresh dossier in court.
1) AABB 2) BBBB 3) ABBB 4) ABBA
17. You are **liable (A) / likely (B)** to be sued in court if you do anything that violates the terms of our contract.
With his daunting size and quick reflexes, he proves a **fearful (A) / fearsome (B)** opponent.
He **poured (A) / pored (B)** over the entire catalogue.
He **assumed (A) / presumed (B)** the position of Assistant Manager.
1) ABBB 2) BBBA 3) AABA 4) ABBA
18. On his death, his bravery was immortalized with a moving **epitaph (A) / epigram (B)**.
The scientist came up with an **ingenious (A) / ingenuous (B)** plan to solve the seemingly impossible nuclear crisis, leaving his peers awestruck.
She was **eagerly (A) / anxiously (B)** looking forward to the summer holidays.
They have formed a **clique (A) / click (B)** and have shut out outsiders completely.
1) BABA 2) ABBA 3) AAAA 4) AABA
19. The final witness **corroborated (A) / collaborated (B)** the defendant's story, leading to the expected 'not guilty' verdict.
You can hail a cab or **alternately (A) / alternatively (B)** I can give you a lift as I'm heading in the same direction.
Their rivalry was supposed to end with the final **duel (A) / dual (B)**.
A **horde (A) / hoard (B)** of reporters was waiting for the sportsman outside the stadium.
1) AAAA 2) BBAA 3) AABA 4) ABAA

Directions: Each question below consists of a capitalized pair of words, followed by four pairs of words labelled (1) through (4). Select the pair that best expresses a relationship similar to that expressed in the capitalized pair.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>20. EMIGRATE : EXILE
 1) conspire : usurp
 2) bedevil : excommunicate
 3) reside : incarcerate
 4) transpire : eradicate</p> | <p>21. SONNET : POEM
 1) act : play
 2) flamenco : dance
 3) burlesque : verse
 4) cinema : visual</p> |
| <p>22. ACOUSTIC : SOUND
 1) logistic : reason
 2) seismic : flooding
 3) histrionic : acting
 4) vernal : seasons</p> | <p>23. ABHORRENT : REPULSE
 1) incoherent : order
 2) threatening : hurt
 3) articulate : clarify
 4) cogent : convince</p> |
| <p>24. PAEAN : PRAISE
 1) encomium : distress
 2) dirge : mourning
 3) eulogy : sorrow
 4) diatribe : joy</p> | <p>25. APPARITION : REALITY
 1) ingrate : regret
 2) bombast : practice
 3) renegade : loyalty
 4) gallant : victory</p> |
| <p>26. TACT : DIPLOMAT
 1) masterpiece : painter
 2) lecture : professor
 3) operation : surgeon
 4) sobriety : judge</p> | <p>27. FAIR : FARE
 1) smart : pretty
 2) bushel : corn
 3) hair : hare
 4) moral : amoral</p> |
| <p>28. GALLEY : SHIP
 1) mall : market
 2) kitchen : house
 3) banquet : feast
 4) restaurant : hotel</p> | <p>29. LETHARGIC : STIMULATE
 1) sceptical : convince
 2) bored : disinterested
 3) unwilling : willing
 4) erudite : teach</p> |
| <p>30. STAGGER : ARRANGEMENT
 1) canter : movement
 2) cure : penchant
 3) pertain : relevance
 4) aver : dispute</p> | <p>31. SAVANT : OBTUSE
 1) seer : ominous
 2) writer : verbose
 3) judge : melodramatic
 4) athlete : sluggish</p> |
| <p>32. CHANTRY : CHURCH
 1) bedroom : house
 2) hotel : suite
 3) temple : devotees
 4) book : library</p> | <p>33. FACADE : VENEER
 1) serendipity : infant
 2) parade : march
 3) equity : liberalism
 4) sobriety : insouciance</p> |

34. HEATHEN : INFIDEL
1] imbecilic : foolish
2] pathetic : painful
3] ribald : demure
4] modest : docile

35. PURÉE : CULINARY
1] royalty : peremptory
2] affidavit : legal
3] rage : accusatory
4] violence : febrile

Directions: This question consists of two capitalized words that have a certain relationship to each other, followed by a certain pair of words. Choose the pair that is *RELATED* to each other in the same way as the capitalized pair. **(Past CAT Questions)**

36. LIQUID : GASEOUSNESS
1) Serum : Fume
2) Humid : Arid
3) Thaw : Distil
4) Smoke : Cloud

37. FISSION : FUSION
1) Implosion : Explosion
2) Separation : Togetherness
3) Intrusion : Extrusion
4) Enemy : Friend

38. DOUBT : FAITH
1) Atheist : Religion
2) Sceptic : Pious
3) Iconoclast : Idol
4) Apostate : State

39. BRICK : BUILDING
1) Word : Dictionary
2) Alphabet : Letter
3) Platoon : Soldier
4) Idiom : Language

40. DULCET : RAUCOUS
1) Sweet : Song
2) Crazy : Sane
3) Palliative : Exacerbating
4) Theory : Practical

41. DOGGEREL : POET
1) Composer : Symphony
2) Prediction : Astrologer
3) Wine : Vintner
4) Pulp fiction : Novelist

42. PREMISE : CONCLUSION
1) Inference : Assumption
2) Hypothesis : Theory
3) Knowledge : Ideas
4) Brand : Marketing

Directions: In each question, there are five sentences. Each sentence has a pair of words that are italicized and highlighted. From the italicized and highlighted words, select the most appropriate words (A or B) to form correct sentences.

- 43.
- A. When it came to manners, he was a **boor** [A] / **bore** [B] and often unwelcome in gatherings.
- B. As a connoisseur of fine wine, he had a refined **pallette** [A] / **palate** [B].
- C. Her curiosity was **peaked** [A] / **piqued** [B] by the reference to genealogy which fascinated her.
- D. The **bole** [A] / **boll** [B] of the tree was too weak to be resistant to the winds.

44.

- A. The trousers were **pared [A] / paired [B]** at the ankle and had a futuristic look.
- B. The **islets [A] / eyelets [B]** on the curtains were too small for the large holder.
- C. He was a rather **complacent [A] / complaisant [B]** person and therefore appreciated by the authority figures.
- D. The **coarse [A] / course [B]** for the games had been prepared in a hurry and lacked a proper finishing.

45.

- A. He was shocked to **canon [A] / cannon [B]** into him at a bend in the road.
- B. The dossier had been filled with so many **carets [A] / carats [B]**, she had trouble making sense of the document.
- C. While he wanted to win, he was too lazy to **canvass [A] / canvas [B]** for the elections.
- D. He had developed an annoying **tic [A] / tick [B]** in his mouth.



PRACTICE EXERCISE-6

Directions: In each of the questions, a word has been used in the given sentences in four different ways. Choose the option corresponding to the sentence in which the usage of the word is incorrect or inappropriate.

1. **WORK**

- 1) We have to work it out between us; there is no other way.
- 2) Her style of management doesn't work me.
- 3) You have to work your socks off if you want this post.
- 4) I can understand your eagerness to see immediate results, but you have to understand that she is a work in progress.

2. **THROW**

- 1) Since we are constantly on the move, let us get some throw away cups and plates for use.
- 2) I was confused so I asked her to throw some light on the matter.
- 3) The stadium is a stone's throw away from my office.
- 4) With your charming personality, you can throw anybody off guard.

3. **ROPE**

- 1) The imperial guards roped out the area around the palace.
- 2) I plan to rope in a major star for the lead role.
- 3) He wanted me to learn the ropes before I started taking any decisions.
- 4) I gave him enough rope before asking him to put in his papers.

4. **PUT**

- 1) Her insensitive question put me over the spot.
- 2) I was put out by her obnoxious personality.
- 3) I am going to put in my papers tomorrow.
- 4) We are not going to put up with corruption any longer.

5. **LOOK**

- 1) I can't come because I have to look down upon my sick mother.
- 2) We should take a long, hard look at ourselves.
- 3) In India, all the people who love cricket look up to Sachin Tendulkar.
- 4) I have to look into your complaints before I can assure you of measures that would be taken.

Directions: Fill in the blanks with the appropriate option.

6. The students were stunned when they _____ the statements put forward by the learned professor.
1) corroborated 2) refuted 3) decried 4) elaborated
7. I bought _____ a new car last weekend.
1) myself 2) me 3) I 4) themselves
8. The Indian IT industry has _____ age and is now counted among mature markets.
1) come through 2) come upon
3) come of 4) come out of
9. Her embroidered shirt _____ over her pink skirt.
1) flowed out of 2) flowed from
3) flowed down 4) flowed against
10. The Birlas are planning to _____ the hotels business.
1) get through 2) get from 3) get into 4) get inside

Directions: In each of the sentences, part/s of the sentences are left blank. Below each sentence, four different ways of completing the sentence are indicated. Choose the word or set of words for each blank that best fits the meaning of the sentence as a whole.

11. The former vice-chancellor of Aligarh University points out that every mosque north of Ernakulam has been _____ women to offer prayers for years now, and the opponents to this are in a _____.
1) welcoming, temple 2) permitting, minority
3) a right of, majority 4) prohibiting, fierce state
12. We are the worldwide leader in the electrical _____ and we have what it takes to _____.
1) industry, get things done 2) business, take on
3) showrooms, succeed 4) shocks, shock them
13. Britain, it seems, has always been _____ on the verge of a software _____.
1) sinking, mania 2) keen, industry
3) very much, panic 4) just, boom

14. To neo-economists, however, both approaches seem curiously _____ in one _____ aspect.
- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1) lacking, crucial | 2) curious, and all |
| 3) weird, or another | 4) mixed, funny |
15. _____ is to be distinguished from the activity of desire itself, as a stimulus or _____ to its determination.
- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1) Aversion, provocation | 2) Concupiscence, incitement |
| 3) Urging, node | 4) Motive, bidding |
16. The nature versus nurture _____ inherent in the debate as to whether body language signals and their meanings are culturally determined or whether such cues are innate is false; one does not _____ the other's influence.
- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1) divaricator, anticipate | 2) argument, forestall |
| 3) choice, exacerbate | 4) dichotomy, preclude |
17. Much of the original work on marital abuse was based upon the weakest type of research _____, namely exploratory surveys with no clear _____ or rationale backing them.
- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------|
| 1) organisation, suspicion | 2) system, lemma |
| 3) methodology, hypothesis | 4) mode, thesis |
18. _____ gambling is a common anti-social behaviour, which has very little _____ social value.
- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1) Occasional, remedy | 2) Pathological, redeeming |
| 3) Saturnine, redress | 4) Frequent, rectification |
19. High prices are often the _____ of _____ of goods.
- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------|
| 1) accompaniment, dearth | 2) cause, scarcity |
| 3) cause, destitution | 4) result, glut |
20. I should not have _____ to talk in such a _____ strain especially when I had not studied the man to whom I was talking.
- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1) daring, commanding | 2) try, bold |
| 3) ventured, peremptory | 4) embolden, reckless |

Directions: This question consists of two capitalized words that have a certain relationship to each other, followed by a certain pair of words. Choose the pair that is *RELATED* to each other in the same way as the capitalized pair. **(Past CAT Questions)**

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>21. CAR : ROAD</p> <p>1) Electricity : Cable</p> <p>2) Ink : Pencil</p> <p>3) Bomb : Missile</p> <p>4) Fly : Bird</p> | <p>22. FORESIGHT : FARSIGHTEDNESS</p> <p>1) Long : Lengthy</p> <p>2) Further : Farther</p> <p>3) Short : Dwarf</p> <p>4) Thinker : Visionary</p> |
| <p>23. FLEET : NAVY</p> <p>1) Chapter : Book</p> <p>2) Auditorium : Seats</p> <p>3) Word : Letter</p> <p>4) Ocean : Drop</p> | <p>24. FEATHER : WING</p> <p>1) Down : Goose</p> <p>2) Cotton : Mattress</p> <p>3) Subheading : Heading</p> <p>4) Brick : Wall</p> |
| <p>25. SUGAR : TEA</p> <p>1) Paper : Editor</p> <p>2) Weapon : Murderer</p> <p>3) Button : Buttonhole</p> <p>4) Umbrella : Rain</p> | <p>26. SYMPHONY : COMPOSER</p> <p>1) Rain : Flood</p> <p>2) Light : Switch</p> <p>3) Novel : Author</p> <p>4) Song : Music</p> |
| <p>27. TREE : TRUNK</p> <p>1) Pen : Ink</p> <p>2) Car : Chassis</p> <p>3) Cabin : Log</p> <p>4) Arm : Body</p> | <p>28. CIRCLE : ARC</p> <p>1) Line : Segment</p> <p>2) Part : Whole</p> <p>3) Percent : Fraction</p> <p>4) Small : Big</p> |
| <p>29. COW : HERD</p> <p>1) Grass : Green</p> <p>2) Child : Family</p> <p>3) Bald : Hair</p> <p>4) Horse : Jockey</p> | <p>30. WOOL : ACRYLIC</p> <p>1) Rayon : Silk</p> <p>2) Plastic : Rubber</p> <p>3) Winter : Spring</p> <p>4) Cotton : Terylene</p> |

Directions: This question consists of two capitalized words that have a certain relationship to each other, followed by a certain pair of words. Choose the pair that is *NOT RELATED* to each other in the same way as the capitalized pair. **(Past CAT Questions)**

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>31. RENT : LEASE</p> <p>1) Interest : Borrow</p> <p>2) Salary : Employ</p> <p>3) Price : Buy</p> <p>4) Tax : Govern</p> | <p>32. TEMPERATURE : HEAT</p> <p>1) Votes : Popularity</p> <p>2) IQ : Intelligence</p> <p>3) Ohms : Resistance</p> <p>4) Speed : Distance</p> |
|--|---|

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 33. PROGRESS : PROGRESSIVE | 34. STUBBORN : ADAPTABLE |
| 1) Reform : Reformist | 1) Stupid : Bright |
| 2) Sympathy : Sympathizer | 2) Moral : Amoral |
| 3) Revolution : Revolutionary | 3) Inherent : Extraneous |
| 4) Terror : Terrorist | 4) Friend : Enemy |
| 35. CLIPS : PAPER | |
| 1) Thread : Beads | |
| 2) Cement : Bricks | |
| 3) Ribbon : Hair | |
| 4) Bag : Vegetables | |

Directions: *There are two gaps in each of the following sentences. From the pairs of words given, choose the one that fills the gaps most appropriately. The first word in the pair should fill the first gap.*

36. In a country like India with a lot of unemployment and _____ opportunities for formal jobs, Artificial Intelligence (AI) is unlikely to be _____ as only high expertise jobs will be hit.
- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1) falling, disruptive. | 2) increasing, beneficial |
| 3) myriad, enabling | 4) shrinking, insignificant |
37. Because the athlete had been _____ twice on charges of drug abuse, his position on the new team is in _____.
- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| 1) arrested, demand | 2) disqualified, predicament |
| 3) excluded, jeopardy | 4) debarred, ridicule. |
38. The professor taught by example: she avoided _____ in her explanations, and berated her students for any tendency toward _____.
- | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1) conciseness, long-windedness | 2) prolixity, circumlocution |
| 3) pertinacity, obstinacy | 4) brevity, adroitness |
39. Normally _____, my friend had a tendency to fly into rage and create a scene when he is _____.
- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1) obtuse, tyrannical | 2) prosaic, indecisive |
| 3) taciturn, enraged | 4) implacable, confronted |
40. The _____ value of the historian's work lies in the preservation of facts in the country's history, religion, antiquities and language, which but for him might have _____.
- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1) evanescent, elevated | 2) eternal, expired |
| 3) abiding, perished | 4) eminent, languished |

41. The Botanical Garden of Calcutta is noteworthy as the _____ of numerous _____ described by writers on Indian botany.
- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1) fountainhead, species | 2) conservatoire, plants |
| 3) collective, specimen | 4) repository, specimens |
42. A difficult problem facing translators of Kafka is how to deal with the author's intentional use of _____ idioms and words that have several meanings which results in phrasing that is difficult to translate _____.
- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1) ambiguous, precisely | 2) absurd, effortlessly |
| 3) stimulating, accurately | 4) profound, lucidly |

VA-3.3 | TENSES AND SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD



Tenses

Introduction

Application of the proper tense forms is a prerequisite to understand when an action is done. Errors in tenses, whether in written or in spoken form, can alter the meaning of a sentence. It is, therefore, important to understand the kind of errors that occur while using tenses so that they may be avoided.

Tenses of a verb show the time of an action or event. Tenses also indicate the state of an action. They are broadly classified into present, past and future. All these tenses have simple, perfect, continuous and perfect continuous forms.

Let us look at a brief overview of the different kinds of tenses before we understand the errors that happen while using them.

- Present Tense (events happening/have just happened in the present moment)
- Past Tense (events that have happened/were happening in the past)
- Future Tense (events that are going to happen in the time to come)

1. Simple Forms

i. Simple Present

The simple present tense normally addresses present events or actions, without any reference to the completeness or incompleteness of the events or actions.

Examples

I *study* in the morning.

They *clean* the roadside pavements everyday.

Uses of Simple Present Tense:

1. To denote a recurring action or situation.

Examples

Every year the college *selects* new students for the college council.

Every month he *goes* for a dental check-up.

2. To represent a universal truth.

Examples

Fe *is* the chemical symbol for iron.

There *is* rarely any cure for diseases that relate to the mind.

3. To express an unchanging action.

Examples

The Alps *look* lovely in summer, don't they?

The moon *has* an important impact on ocean tides.

4. To express a habit.

Examples

He always *speaks* about his old Ferrari.

I *drink* at least a glass of milk every day.

5. To denote routine activities.

Examples

The post office *opens* at 9 a.m.

The cargo flight *departs* at 8 p.m.

6. To denote conditional future actions that are part of a fixed timetable.

Examples

If Roma *comes* to Rome, she will stay with me.

If we *leave* by 7:50 a.m., we will reach Mumbai early.

7. To denote an action in the immediate future.

Example

Please go back, *it is about to rain*.

8. To denote an action that is applicable across all time frames. Such verb forms are generally preceded by helper verbs like *can*.

Example

He *can take* care of himself if need be.

9. To denote a future event that has already been planned.

Example

He *begins* his journey tomorrow.

ii. Simple Past

The simple past verb form is employed to denote events or actions that have already been concluded. Past tenses are generally formed by adding *-d* or *-ed* to the root verb.

Examples

She *performed* well in the examination.

He *withdrew* support at the very last moment.

Uses of Simple Past Tense:

1. To denote the duration of events or actions that happened in the past.

Examples

He *waited* there for an hour.

She *lived* in the city for nearly four years.

2. To represent a series of completed actions.

Examples

He *reached* home, *completed* his meal, and *walked* for an hour.

He *drank* to the brink, *lost* consciousness, and *fell* on the ground.

3. To express past habits and practices.

Examples

He *studied* discrete Mathematics when he was young.

He *bicycled* a lot during his college days.

4. To relate to other past continuous actions.

Examples

When he was sitting there, he *heard* a strange sound.

While she was sleeping, the robbers *broke* in.

iii. Simple Future

The simple future tense refers to future actions that are possibly going to happen. Both *will/shall* and *am/is/are going to* are used to form the simple future.

Examples

She *will spend* her summer vacation in Jakarta.

He *is going to spend* his summer vacation in Jakarta.

Uses of simple future tense:

1. To denote a general prediction about something that might happen in the future.

Examples

He *is going to be* the President after the ongoing elections.

He *will be* the President after the ongoing elections.

2. To express a promise.

Examples

We *will* definitely *invite* you to the party.
She *will* *give* us a treat if she gets first division.

3. To express intentions and plans.

Examples

What are you *going to do* ten years from now?
He *is going to* Japan on an official visit.

Note

While expressing intentions and plans, *going to* is preferred to *will/shall*.

2. Continuous Forms

i. Present Continuous

The present continuous tense denotes actions that are currently going on.

Examples

Clyde *is watching* the news.
He *is riding* a horse.

Uses of Present Continuous Tense:

1. To represent a temporary action in the present—an action which is still going on (but which will stop in future).

Examples

We *are working* on an important news item.
It *is raining* heavily outside.

2. To denote a certain plan for the future—something we intend to do, usually in the near future.

Examples

I *am going* to France in the coming week.
What *are you doing* this weekend?

3. To speak about repeated actions, especially those that are irritating. In this case, we can use words like *always* and *constantly*.

Examples

Robin *is constantly leaving* his things cluttered around the room.
Mihika *is always interrupting* people.

4. To describe trends, developments and changes.

Examples

The human species *is* constantly *evolving*. (development)

Her puppy *is growing up* so fast. (change)

Nowadays people *are eating out* more often than in the past. (trend)

5. To speak about something that usually happens at a specific or defined point in time, not necessarily the present moment.

Examples

At seven in the morning, I *am* usually *working* at the gym.

He *is working* on this project for the past one year.

Note

The present continuous tense cannot be used to write about habits, likes or preferences. Also, the present continuous tense cannot be used to describe regular or routine activities.

Examples

I *am loving to go* for morning walk. (incorrect)

I *love to go* for morning walk. (correct)

I *am going* to the club everyday. (incorrect)

I *go to* the club everyday. (correct)

ii. Past Continuous

The past continuous tense denotes actions or events that were going on in the past.

Examples

He *was watching* television.

He *was travelling* by car.

Uses of Past Continuous Tense:

1. To denote a prolonged event or action that is interrupted. In such cases, the past continuous refers to the longer event.

Examples

He *was sleeping* when the telephone *rang*.

She *was doing* homework, when all her brothers *called* her up.

2. To denote parallel actions of a single doer or more than one doer.

Examples

He *was cooking* while his wife *was talking* over the telephone.

She *was reading* even though she *was watching* television.

iii. Future Continuous

The future continuous tense denotes actions or events as ongoing at a particular point of time in future.

Examples

He *will be going* there tomorrow.

She *will be coming* next week.

Anomalies

1. The continuous tense is not usually used to denote verbs of emotion, e.g., feel, love, like, hate, refuse, prefer, desire, etc.

She *is loving* me. (incorrect)

She *loves* me. (correct)

2. The continuous tense is not usually used to denote verbs of appearance, e.g., seem, appear, look, etc.

The sea *is appearing* beautiful. (incorrect)

The sea *appears* beautiful. (correct)

3. The continuous tense is not usually used to denote verbs of perception, e.g., see, hear, smell, notice, recognise, etc.

Near the old deck they *were noticing* a big merchant ship. (incorrect)

Near the old deck they *noticed* a big merchant ship. (correct)

4. The continuous tense is not usually used to denote general or universal truths.

All planets *are revolving* in their respective orbits. (incorrect)

All planets *revolve* in their respective orbits. (correct)

5. The continuous tense is not usually used to denote verbs of ownership, possession, belongingness, etc.

He *is owning* a property worth millions. (incorrect)

He *owns* a property worth millions. (correct)

6. The continuous tense is not usually used to denote verbs of thinking, e.g., think, agree, trust, suppose, remember, understand, mean, mind, forget, etc.

He *was thinking* that she was married. (incorrect)

He *thought* that she was married. (correct)

3. Perfect Forms

i. Present Perfect

The present perfect tense normally addresses events or actions that are just completed and that have bearing on the happening present.

Examples

She *has worked* on the project for long.

He *has finished* the work on time.

Uses of Present Perfect Tense:

1. To address activities completed in the immediate past.

Example

She *has just started* her journey.

2. To denote a past action whose time is not definitely given.

Examples

He *has been* to Australia.

She *has never come* across any odds.

3. To express past events when we think more of their effect in the present.

Example

He *has completed* his homework.

4. To describe an action beginning at some time in the past, and which is still continuing.

Examples

He *has not been affected* by diseases since long.

She *has known* her boyfriend for years.

5. To indicate habitual actions with the inclusion of always to suggest the recurrence of those actions.

Example

She *has always been* a Methodist.

ii. Past Perfect

When two past actions in a sentence do not occur at the same time, the earlier action should be denoted by the past perfect tense. The past perfect tense is also used to describe an action completed at a certain moment in the past.

Examples

She *had spoken* to her classmates regarding her ill health.

We *had written* the letter much before we had our meeting with the authorities.

iii. Future Perfect

The future perfect tense is used to depict actions that will be completed by a certain time in the future.

Example

He *will have sorted* out his problem by that time.

4. Perfect Continuous Forms

i. Present Perfect Continuous

The present perfect continuous tense is used to designate actions that began at some time in the past, and are still continuing.

Examples

She *has been talking* for more than an hour.

He *has not been keeping* well since the past few weeks.

ii. Past Perfect Continuous

An action that began before a certain time in the past, and continued till that time is denoted by the past perfect continuous tense.

Example

When he received the call, he *had been dreaming* of the trip for two hours.

iii. Future Perfect Continuous

Actions which will be in progress over a period of time that will end in the future, are denoted by the future perfect continuous tense.

Example

By next week, the cruise liner *will have been sailing* for two weeks.

Consistency of Tense in a Sentence

1. In a single sentence, if there are more than two verbs, the tense used must be kept consistent for each verb. This is also important for maintaining parallel structure in a sentence.

Examples

The artist *sang, danced* and *was sashaying* on the stage. (incorrect)

The artist *sang, danced* and *sashayed* on the stage. (correct)

2. If the main clause is in the present or the future tense and the subordinate clause denotes a different time frame, the subordinate clause may be depicted by a different tense, according to the sense implied.

Examples

She *knows* (simple present) that he *was* (simple past) unwell.

He *will finish* (simple future) the work on time provided she *helps* (simple present) him.

3. If the main clause is in the past tense, the subordinate clause should also be denoted by the past or the past perfect tense.

Examples

She *understood* that she *has* to work hard. (incorrect)

She *understood* that she *had* to work hard. (correct)

4. If two actions in the past took place at the same time, they may be denoted by the simple past tense, but if one of the actions preceded the other, the earlier action has to be denoted by the past perfect tense.

Examples

Most of the passengers *were* fast asleep as it *was* a hard day for all. (incorrect)

Most of the passengers *were* fast asleep as it *had been* a hard day for all. (correct)

5. If the subordinate clause depicts general truths or proverbial sayings, it is depicted by the present tense even if the main clause happens to be in the past tense.

Examples

The physics teacher *said* that all physical laws *are* governed by the gravitational forces.

He *said* where there *is* a will there *is* a way.

6. When there is a distinct difference in the time frame of two actions in a sentence, they can be denoted by different tenses.

Example

During the Trojan war, the warriors *used to wear* metal masks, now warriors *fight* open-faced.

7. When the preposition *since/ever since* is used, the verb is usually in the present perfect continuous tense.

Examples

He *has been* looking for her *ever since*.

They *have been searching* for the hidden treasure *since* a couple of years.

Note

Since can also take a past or a past perfect tense.

Example

It is more than ten years *since* he last *met* his school friends.

Usage of Different Tense Forms

1. Present Forms

Can you not be deciding once and for all what you want to do in life? (incorrect)

Can you not decide once and for all what you want to do in life? (correct)

Gold *becomes* more and more expensive every day. (incorrect)

Gold *is becoming* more and more expensive every day. (correct)

The teachers *plan* a strike against the school management. (incorrect)

The teachers *are planning* a strike against the school management. (correct)

My teacher *is* often *being* a little *upset* with my work. (incorrect)

My teacher *is* often a little *upset* with my work. (correct)

Tigers *are not liking* to live in cages. (incorrect)

Tigers *do not like* to live in cages. (correct)

2. Past Forms

She *wrote, edited* and *was reading* out the news item for CNN. (incorrect)

She *wrote, edited* and *read* out the news item for CNN. (correct)

She *was loving* to *read, write* and also *sing* carols. (incorrect)

She *loved* to *read, write* and *sing* carols. (correct)

He *was not sharing* his experiences with us for the fear of rejection. (incorrect)

He *did not share* his experiences with us for the fear of rejection. (correct)

I *was preparing* my lunch everyday before I *leave* for work in the morning. (incorrect)

I *prepared* my lunch everyday before I *left* for work in the morning. (correct)

He *had finished* lunch by the time he *was coming*. (incorrect)

He *had finished* lunch by the time he *came*. (correct)

3. Future Forms

He *will have stayed* in the city by the time his friend *shifted* to the suburbs. (incorrect)

He *will have stayed* in the city by the time his friend *shifts* to the suburbs. (correct)

I *shall have responded* to the e-mail tomorrow night. (incorrect)

I *shall respond* to the e-mail tomorrow night. (correct)

She *will be living* for three months by the time her son returns next July. (incorrect)

She *will have been living* for three months by the time her son returns next July. (correct)



Day after *will have been* a Sunday. (incorrect)

Day after *will be* a Sunday. (correct)

He *will have been departing* tonight. (incorrect)

He *will be departing* tonight. (correct)

Mood

A verb can be used in different ways, for example, to indicate an action, to state the time when the action has taken place, to express a command, etc. A verb can also be used to indicate the mode or manner in which a statement is made. Therefore, mood is the manner in which the action denoted by the verb is put forth.

There are three different moods:

- Indicative mood
- Imperative mood
- Subjunctive mood

1. Indicative Mood

When a statement expresses something which is either a fact assumed to be a fact, the mode of usage of the verb is in the indicative mood.

1. The indicative mood may be used to state simple facts

Examples

The boy *goes* to school.

I *write* with a pen.

2. The indicative mood may be used to ask questions.

Examples

Do you *like* to play?

Is your friend coming?

3. The indicative mood may also be used to express a supposition, which is taken as a fact.

Examples

If he *eats* ice creams, he *will be* punished. (taking it as a fact that he will eat ice creams)

If it *rains*, I *will not go* to school. (the supposition here is that it will rain)

Thus, the indicative mood can:

- state a fact
- ask a question
- express a supposition

2. Imperative Mood

Imperative Mood, as the name suggests, indicates a compulsion. When a verb is used to express a command, entreaty, request, wish, insistence, prayer, etc., without mentioning the subject, the verb is said to be in the imperative mood. Usually the subject of the verb in the imperative mood is understood, hence it is omitted.

Thus, the imperative mood can be used to:

- give orders
- make a request
- advise someone
- entreat or plead
- express a supposition
- indicate giving away something absolutely

Consider the following examples:

Go to school, now.

Stand up, on the bench.

In these sentences it appears that someone is giving an order.

Now look at the following sentences:

Please go to school.

Kindly stand up and pass me the book.

There is a shift in the tone. The speaker makes a request.

Again look at the following sentences:

Do not misbehave with people.

Be patient with your students.

Here it seems the speaker is advising someone.

Now consider the following sentences:

Help me.

Have pity on me.

Here the speaker seems to entreat or plead.

The imperative mood is also used to express a supposition, but here the supposition is not considered a fact.

Examples

Read (if you read) more and your vocabulary will improve.

Move (unless you move) or we will kill you.

Sometimes the imperative mood can be used in the sense of giving something absolutely.

Examples

Give me your doll.

Give me some money.

Note

The imperative mood is used in the second person because the person who is being commanded is the person spoken to. When used in the first and the third person, the auxiliary verb *let* is added:

Examples

Let me do it.

Let them go to the place.

3. Subjunctive Mood

Subjunctive mood expresses a wish or uncertainty. There are two forms—*Present Subjunctive* such as *we be*, *they be*, *I look*, *they look*, etc. and *Past Subjunctive* such as *I were*, *we were*, *I looked*, *they looked*, etc.

i. Present Subjunctive:

Look at the following examples:

Long *live* the King!

God *be* with you!

Here, with the help of a present subjunctive, the speaker seems to express a wish. This usage is mainly limited to traditional phrases.

The present subjunctive is also used with verbs expressing desire, intention, proposal, etc. followed by a noun clause. This form is mainly used for situations where the order or intention or the proposal has not yet been carried out.

Examples

It is *suggested* that he *should be hanged* by the neck.

We *recommend* that the appraisal of the employees *be conducted* at the end of the financial year.

In sentences where the verbs indicate desire or wish, the word *should* is implied, though we do not always use it.

Example

He *desires* that she (should) *complete* her education before marriage.

Notes

1. Other than the verb *to be*, the verbs in the present subjunctive are in their base forms. The verb remains the same in form and does not change whether the subject is singular or plural.

Examples

The preacher *believes* that we *treat* the criminals with compassion.

The preachers *believe* that we *treat* the criminals with compassion.

2. In case of the verb *to be*, the present form is *be*, and the past form is *were* for all numbers and persons.

ii. Past Subjunctive:

The past subjunctive mood is used to indicate a condition or a supposition, which is not real in the present.

In most cases, the verb *were* for 1st and 3rd person singular is used as a subjunctive to express the unreality of a situation. *If* is used here to indicate the improbability.

Examples

If I were there, I would not have allowed him to abuse his wife.

If we started early, we could have watched the beginning of the movie.

The past subjunctive is also used after the verb *wish* to indicate a situation which is imaginary and contrary to the real scenario.

Examples

I *wish* I *were* in England.

She *wishes* the flat *belonged* to her.

The past subjunctive, when used after *as if* or *as though*, indicates an unreal situation.

Examples

He behaves *as if* he *were* the director of the company.

Roma walks *as though* she *is* in a beauty pageant.

The past subjunctive when used after *it is time* or *it is high time* indicates that it is late.

Examples

It *is time* that we *take* matters seriously.

It *is high time* that you *discipline* your daughter.

The past subjunctive when used after *would rather + subject* indicates preference.

Example

I *would rather* you *acted* in the play. (I would prefer you to act in the play)

In the past subjunctive, the verb is always indicative of the past and in case of hypothetical situations also, the verb *were* implies *would have been*.

Example

If I *were* the queen. (If I *would have been* the queen)

Conditionals

Conditionals in English grammar refer to would-be situations or possibilities in the present or future. Sentences with conditionals have two parts—the *main clause*, and the *subordinate clause* beginning with the conditional *if*.

Example

If it rains I will stay at home.

Sometimes the *if* clause may follow the main clause:

Examples

You will be punished *if* you do not finish your homework.

She will visit us *if* he accompanies her.

There are three types of Conditionals:

1. Conditional 1

This type of a conditional is used to refer a situation that arises if a particular condition is met. This type of conditional is formed by the use of the simple present in the *if* clause + *will* + verb (base form) in the part that indicates the result.

Examples

If I win the match, I *will celebrate*.

If I go there, I *will meet* him.

Here if the verb in the *if* clause is in the present tense; the verb in the main clause will be in the simple future.

Note

To indicate this type of conditional, we often use *unless*, which implies *if...not*.

Example

He *will be penalised unless* he justifies himself.

This sentence can also imply:

If he does not justify himself, he *will be* penalised.

Conditional 1 is also employed to denote a situation, which is always true if the condition is fulfilled, i.e., it is indicative of a habitual result. In such cases the verbs in both the principal and the *if* clauses are denoted by the present tense. This type of a construction can be reframed using *when*.

Examples

When I am late, my mother *scolds* me.

I *do not go* to school *when* it rains.

2. Conditional 2:

This type of a conditional is used for unreal or improbable situations. It provides an imaginary result for an imagined situation. This type of a conditional is formed by the use of the simple past in the *if* clause + *would* + verb (base form) in the part that indicates the result.

Examples

If they *had* time, they *could build* the wall in two days.

If I *had* more money, I *would buy* the new Nokia N series cell phone.

Note

The *to be* form of the verb in the first person is always conjugated as *were* in the second conditional.

Examples

If I *were* the treasurer, I *would use* the money for social welfare.

If he *were* the President, he *would grant* aid to the educational institutions.

3. Conditional 3

This type of a conditional is also called the past conditional because it refers to past situations with hypothetical results. The condition cannot be fulfilled because the time is past. The *if* clause is in the past perfect tense and the main clause is in the perfect conditional.

Examples

If I *had won* the prize, my life *would have* changed.

If we *had met* earlier, we *could have spent* our life together.

This type of conditional is formed by the use of the past perfect in the *if* clause + *would have* + past participle in the part indicating the result.



CLASS EXERCISE

Directions: For each sentence, choose the correct word for the blank from the words or phrases given in brackets.

1. Sister Rose _____ (prays / is praying) daily and never _____ (forgets / forgot) her calling.
2. During my youth, I never understood that brevity _____ (is / was) the soul of wit.
3. I just want to reiterate what T.S. Eliot _____ (says / had said) in *The Wasteland*, "In my end is my beginning".
4. My boss _____ (retires / retiring) next month and will spend most of his time in Italy.
5. On enquiry, a lady told me that the train _____ (leaves / is leaving) at 7 a.m. everyday.
6. There he _____ (goes / is going) with his perfectly unkempt clothes!
7. I shall wait till I see that all _____ (are / will be) quiet and sitting properly.
8. He _____ (needs / is needing) my help in filling up this form.
9. In school we _____ (heard / were hearing) strange stories of carts that went about in the dead of night.
10. Analyzing the size of the buy that Company X is attempting, it _____ (is looking / looks) like a case of Jonah swallowing the whale.
11. Nowadays, I _____ (hate / am hating) the way they stick the word 'wellness' on every product and think it will make you buy it.
12. Though I _____ (was wanting / wanted) to watch the movie after reading the reviews, none of my friends was willing to accompany me.
13. I haven't seen you in a while, yet I _____ (am often imagining / often imagine) all your expressions.
14. He _____ (is not understanding / does not understand) what his teacher is explaining in class.
15. I like carrying with me everything I _____ (am possessing / possess).
16. I _____ (think / am thinking) of going to another hair stylist.
17. The rotation of the earth _____ (causes / is causing) the wind to deflect to the right in the Northern Hemisphere.
18. I think he is _____ (to go / going) to die in prison.
19. Currently, I _____ (read / am reading) Adam Bede and I will take two more weeks to finish it.
20. I _____ (am attending / attend) their marriage reception tomorrow evening.
21. My mother-in-law does not allow us any independence at home; she is constantly _____ (interfere / interfering) with our lives.

22. When I went to call her, she _____ (was having / had) her dinner.
23. Intel _____ (just completed / has just completed) the development phase of its next generation manufacturing process that shrinks chip circuitry to 32 nanometers.
24. I _____ (have never seen / was never seeing) him pray, go to mosque or even spend quality time with his family.
25. _____ (Have you ever tried / Had you ever tried) to understand the problem from your father's perspective?

Directions: In each of the following questions there are sentences or parts of sentences that form a paragraph. Identify the sentence(s) or part(s) of sentence(s) that is/are correct in terms of grammar and usage (including spelling, punctuation and logical consistency). Then, choose the most appropriate option.

- 26.
- A. I did not know what to make of you.
- B. Because you'd lived in India, I associate you more with my parents than with me.
- C. And yet you were unlike my cousins in Calcutta, who seem so innocent and obedient when I visited them.
- D. You were not curious about me in the least.
- E. Although you did make effort to meet me.
- 1) A only 2) A and B 3) A and E
- 4) D only 5) A and D

(Past CAT question)

- 27.
- A. Jim had always enjoyed good wages and as much humouring as would have
- B. bought the fidelity of a fiend. Nevertheless, with black ingratitude he threw
- C. up the job suddenly and depart. The reasons he has been giving to his employers
- D. were obviously inadequate. They said "Confounded fool!" as soon as his back
- E. was turned. This is their criticism on his exquisite sensibility.
- 1) B and C 2) B and D 3) A, B and E 4) A and D
- 28.
- A. Ever since Charles Darwin formulated his
- B. theory of evolution by natural selection 150 years ago,
- C. scientists wondered whether the process still
- D. applies to humans. There had been no biological change
- E. in humans in 40,000 or 50,000 years.
- 1) A and B 2) C and D 3) A, B and E 4) B, C and D

29.

- A. Chernobyl is a mostly peaceful settlement for 1,000 years
 B. and a predominantly Jewish town for the past three centuries,
 C. famous for its dynasty of Hasidic sages. Since the Russian Revolution,
 D. the Jews had thinned a lot, but even today there are two shrines
 E. to the Hasidim where once a year devotees come to light candles and prayed.
- 1) A and D 2) B and C 3) A, C and D 4) A, B and E

30.

- A. Whether feigning illness online or in the
 B. real world, fakers had been often profoundly
 C. disappointed when they are being told they may be
 D. ill after all. Many appear preferring the stigma
 E. of being labelled cruel to that of being a psychiatric patient.
- 1) A, B and D 2) B, C and E 3) A and E 4) B and D

31.

- A. Both books acknowledge the uniqueness
 B. of human beings but relapsed repeatedly
 C. into accounts of the mind, self and
 D. consciousness that appeal to a mixture of
 E. neuroscience and evolutionary theory.
- 1) A, C, D and E 2) B, C, D and E
 3) C and E 4) A, B and D

32.

- A. In fact, all sorts of aspects of consciousness
 B. had not been conscious after all.
 C. According to Humphrey, "Before consciousness
 D. ever arose, animals are engaged in some kind of inner
 E. monitoring of their own responses to sensory stimulation."
- 1) A and E 2) B and D
 3) B, C and D 4) A, C and E

33.

- A. She was right: I should not have cared about
B. what other people had said. But I did care.
C. And what they said is shocking.
D. People felt free to say things to me they would
E. never dared say to her.

- 1) A, C and D
- 2) B and E
- 3) A, B and D
- 4) C, D and E

34.

- A. Supposing we found that computers are diminishing
B. our capacity for certain pleasures, or make us worse
C. off in other ways. Why couldn't we simply spend less time
D. in front of the screen and more time doing the things
E. we used to do before computers would have come along?

- 1) A and E 2) B and D 3) C and D 4) C and E

35.

- A. Copyright law has originally been understood as a balance between
B. the need to provide incentives to authors and the need to insure
C. the speedy circulation and cultural absorption of new ideas and insights.
D. The recent corporate culture fundamentally shifted that balance,
E. placing all the muscle on one side of the equation.

- 1) C, D and E 2) C and D 3) A, B and D 4) B and E

Directions: *Identify the mood of the verb in the following sentences.*

36. The world's largest genome-mapping facility is in China.
37. Humans have been interested in the future for millennia.
38. Come now, let us settle the matter.
39. We recommend that every property be surveyed prior to its purchase.
40. If you want to live a happy life, tie it to a goal, not to people or things.
41. If we started now, we could get there in ten years.

Directions: Read the following sentences carefully and identify whether they have been constructed correctly, and make corrections where necessary.

42. The board of directors insisted that he resigned from his post as project manager.
43. We propose that the policy be based to a large degree on the existing arrangements, but with adjustments to comply with the new legislation.
44. The thief demanded that we handed over all our possessions to him.
45. I strongly suggest that he handles this matter as discreetly as possible.
46. I suggest that he be present in today's meeting.
47. The President insisted that they stopped spreading violence.
48. We advised her that she continued with her job if she wished to be independent of her family.
49. My doctor recommended that we avoided giving my child too many sugary drinks, particularly at bedtime, if we want to preserve her dental health.
50. I wish I know how to drive a car.



PRACTICE EXERCISE-1

Directions: Fill in the blanks with the correct form of tense.

1. Where's Jack just now? He's at home. Is he busy? Yes, he _____ a letter. (to write)
2. How does Mary _____ her holidays? She usually _____ at home. (to spend, to stay)
3. Mother _____ some oranges. Are you _____ them for her? (to need, to get)
4. Why _____ you angry with Melissa? Well, because she is constantly _____ in the class. (to be, to sing)
5. It _____ too late to make the changes as the children _____ the paper already. (to be, to solve)
6. She _____ on a biography of her famous father. (to work).
7. Now the kids _____ in the garden with their Uncle Sam. (to play)
8. Are you _____ with me to the market? No, my friends and I _____ to the seashore. (to come, to go)
9. She _____ her homework after the television news. (to finish)
10. Why is Kate quiet? That's because she _____ about Ken. (to dream)
11. Arthur surely is a keen footballer. He _____ football everyday. (to play)
12. Does Johnny _____ asleep in class everyday? Yes, twice! (to fall)
13. Are you _____ to the theatre tonight? I _____ so. (to go, to think)
14. The Himalayas _____ among the highest mountain ranges in the world. (to be)

15. Every year, we _____ an exhibition to raise money for the needy. (to hold)
16. Water _____ the benison of life, isn't it? (to be)
17. Does Carmel _____ in London presently? No, she _____ in Manchester at the moment and has to stay there. (to live, to work)
18. Would you _____ a cake? No thank you, I _____ to lose a few kilos. (to like, to try)
19. I heard that you _____ to the movies tomorrow. Can I _____ along with you? (to go, to come)
20. The Maldives _____ the most beautiful beaches in the world. (to have)
21. The ocean _____ lovely under a moonlit sky, doesn't it? (to look)
22. He always _____ a glass of milk before dinner. (to have)
23. The institution _____ decided to grant agricultural loans to farmers. (to have)
24. Astrophysicists _____ traces of water on Mars. (to find)
25. He _____ some adventure books and _____ them on his way to Manila. (to purchase, to read)
26. We _____ to the chairman much after the formal request. (to write)
27. We _____ fearlessly even though the weather _____ worse. (to travel, was getting)
28. We _____ him when he _____ tomorrow. (to meet, to come)
29. I _____ my task by the weekend. (to complete)
30. A stitch in time _____ nine. (to save)

Directions: *Indicate the moods of the verbs in the following sentences.*

31. Touch it, and you will die.
32. I would go there if I were you.
33. May God bless you.
34. Were I rich, I would have helped you.
35. Do not copy in the examination.

Directions: *Identify the errors in the following sentences.*

36. I wish I can wear the beautiful sari.
37. I wish it was not possible.
38. If it be no sin to dream, I am a dreamer.
39. Romi behaves as if he were the ruler.
40. He wishes that his daughter won the prize.

Directions: *Choose the correct form of verbs to complete the sentences.*

41. He eats at our place, if his mother ____ (go) out of town.
42. If I _____ (have) not seen him before, I _____(not have) recognised him.
43. If I _____ (to be) the Principal, I would change the process of teaching.

44. Reema _____ (pass) if she studies hard.
45. If he goes to Dubai, he _____(bring) gold for his wife.

Directions: Choose the phrase which best completes the conditional statement.

46. You would have been happy,
 1) if you win the tournament.
 2) if you will win the tournament.
 3) if you had won the tournament.
 4) if you will have won the tournament.
47. If her condition deteriorates,
 1) we will shift her to another hospital.
 2) we shifted her to another hospital.
 3) we would have shifted her to another hospital.
 4) we must be shifting her to another hospital.
48. If they had had enough money,
 1) they will purchase a flat in Italy.
 2) they purchased a flat in Italy.
 3) they would have purchased a flat in Italy.
 4) they should purchase a flat in Italy.
49. If she were the Chief Justice,
 1) she would have pardoned him.
 2) she would pardon him.
 3) she pardons him.
 4) she will pardon him.
50. I can't accept your proposal,
 1) unless you give me the list of benefits.
 2) if you are giving me a list of benefits.
 3) if the list of benefits is there.
 4) until the list of benefits are given to me.



PRACTICE EXERCISE-2

Directions: Fill in the blanks with the correct form of tense.

1. I _____ (haven't seen / did not see) a movie for a long time.
2. Media freedom _____ (has been / had been) under serious threat in Iraq, for the last twenty years.
3. Her parents are very happy because she _____ (has achieved / achieved) what so many before her thought unattainable.
4. He _____ (has updated / updated) his resume yesterday.
5. Recently I came to know that my business partner _____ (has been stealing / steals) money from our company since the last two years.
6. They _____ (had worked / have been working) on the project for three months.
7. I _____ (received / receive) this legal notice two weeks ago.
8. Hundreds of women _____ (lost / had been losing) their lives in World War I.
9. When he was in college, he always _____ (carried / had been carrying) a dictionary with him.
10. The restaurant _____ (was getting / gets) a little crowded, so we left the place.
11. He _____ (was trying / has been trying) to figure out what to write.
12. When we met him, he _____ (still shot / was still shooting).
13. He was _____ (saved / saving) from the death sentence but he _____ (had already committed / already committed) suicide.
14. Although we _____ (have done / had done) our testing, we wanted to test a real building with real people.
15. For some time he _____ (had been trying / had tried) hard to make me his follower but he was doing this in a secret way.
16. Last year when I first met him, he _____ (had already been teaching / already taught) here for 5 years.
17. I _____ (will meet / meet) him tomorrow at the shopping mall.
18. I _____ (am going / will go) to disclose everything to my senior.
19. It is his future and what he _____ (will be doing / had been doing) for the rest of his life is his headache.
20. By next January, I _____ (shall have been working / have been working) in this organization for 7 years.
21. He is frightfully bored, and his only comfort lies in the thought that by Sunday he _____ (will have left / leave) the place.

22. In the meeting he reiterated that he _____ (is / was) not responsible for the wrong decisions taken by the organization.
23. When my grandmother was alive, she used to cook some delicious dishes; but it _____ (is / was) not so anymore.
24. I am planning to go for a walk when I _____ (will have finished / finish) reading this book.
25. _____ (Will she have learnt / Did she learn) enough French to communicate before she moves to Paris?

Directions: Read the following sentences carefully and identify whether the following sentences have been constructed correctly, and make corrections where necessary.

26. I wish this bag belongs to me.
27. As soon as I saw the plot of tulips, I thought of how much I missed my mother and how I wished she were here to see them.
28. If I was the owner of this car I would get rid of the clear lamps and put in the stock lamps.
29. It occurred to him that if he was the gatekeeper of hell, he will have plenty of opportunities to turn the key.
30. The man was limping on towards the marshland, as if he was the pirate come to life, and come down, and going back to hook himself up again.
31. I would rather you go for the movie.
32. It is high time that she consults a doctor for her ailment.
33. If we change anything in the calculation, we will get a different result.
34. Whenever we call him he says he would be busy.
35. If they declare a holiday, I would have planned my trip to my uncle's house.
36. If Rahul wins the match, I will give him a present.
37. If the company made a profit, the employees would get the bonus.
38. If she had the looks, she can be a successful model.
39. If she was a writer, she would have beautifully penned her experiences.
40. Had I obtained admission to the elite club, I could establish good contacts with successful people.

Directions: In each of the following questions there are sentences or parts of them that form a paragraph. Identify the sentence(s) or part(s) that is/are incorrect in terms of grammar and usage (including spelling, punctuation and logical consistency). Then, choose the most appropriate option.

41.

- A. To sell our artwork on e-Bay we needed a seller name and
- B. we did not want to connect in any way to the Gallery.
- C. The name Big Busy Bee was suggested and Big Busy Bee Art was born.
- D. In retrospect, did we know that this would eventually develop into a business on its own,
- E. we would put more thought into selecting a more appropriate name.

1) A and B 2) C and D 3) A and D 4) D and E

42.

- A. He adopted a course, which was infinitely creditable
- B. to his dexterity as a tactician. He knew well that
- C. if he has to propose the measure as it is now before us,
- D. and had shown it to his party first, they would have
- E. started back from it in horror.

1) A and C 2) B and D 3) C and D 4) D and E

43.

- A. I really don't feel very well.
- B. I don't know what's wrong with me,
- C. but I am starting to get scared. I wish we were
- D. going back home tonight, but we always sleep over.
- E. I always get sad when this happens, and I wish Michael was here.

1) B and D 2) Only C 3) Only D 4) Only E

44.

- A. Hannah wasn't sure of herself, or of Alex.
- B. The trouble was that Hannah was nineteen,
- C. painfully honest, naiveté - and to top it off, she fell deeply
- D. in love with Alex. And somehow she couldn't quite believe
- E. he loved her, even when he insisted that they married.

1) A and D 2) B and E 3) C and E 4) A, B and D

45.

- A. She had always struggled with her emotions for Ron.
- B. Today when she met him, it was almost as if she was
- C. meeting him for the first time. Unexpectedly,
- D. she saw all the mental turmoil disappear.
- E. Ron chose to lead rather than wait for her instructions.

1) Only A 2) Only B 3) A and C 4) D and E

46.

- A. He is accustomed to getting his own way. His daily well-being
- B. is not infrequently achieved at the expense of somebody else's feelings.
- C. If something thwarted him, some minor dislocation in his private affairs,
- D. he is apt to jump up and down with rage, shouting the while like
- E. Lewis Carroll's Tweedledum. If he were annoyed, his tongue were apt to be sharp.

1) A and D 2) B and C 3) B and D 4) C and E

47.

- A. The roses seem to be coming back to her cheeks already, though she is
- B. still sadly pale and wan-looking. If she was in any way anaemic
- C. I could understand it, but she is not. She is in gay spirits and full of life
- D. and cheerfulness. As she spoke with me, she tapped
- E. playfully on the stone slab with the heel of her boot.

1) Only A 2) Only B 3) B and D 4) C and E

48.

- A. People resented Socrates' efforts when he tried to show them that
- B. they were overestimating their wisdom. He felt it was his divine duty to show people
- C. who thought that they were wise, but were not wise, that they were not.
- D. In answer to an implied suggestion that he stopped philosophizing,
- E. Socrates said that it was his divine duty to philosophize and he would never stop.

1) Only B 2) Only C 3) Only D 4) A and E

49.

- A. The book is loaded with offending words,
- B. which the readers have not come across in any of his books.
- C. Was he the author of the book, he could
- D. easily be omitting the offending words.
- E. Moreover, the text always refers to him in the third person.

1) A and D 2) B and C 3) C and D 4) D and E

50.

- A. Both Arthur and Brenda say that, even if
- B. they will have the means, they would never become
- C. homeowners again. They look back on their only
- D. home-owning experience with regret.
- E. They think they are still paying for it.

1) Only A 2) Only B 3) C and E 4) B and D

VA-3.4 | SENTENCE STRUCTURE, MODIFIERS AND PARALLELISM



Introduction

[I] Sentence

Before understanding the use of phrases, clauses and modifiers in a sentence, it is mandatory to know what a sentence is.

A sentence is a group of words that makes complete sense.

Examples

She is a beautiful girl.
He is a wonderful boy.

Sentence Structure

On the basis of structure, sentences can be classified into three kinds — *Simple*, *Compound* and *Complex*.

1. A sentence that has only one subject and one predicate is called a *Simple Sentence*.

Examples

Her courage won her acclaim.
The sun was shining brightly.
He plays the guitar well.

2. A sentence with two or more coordinate independent clauses but not dependent/subordinate clauses, often joined by a conjunction or same kind of punctuation is called a *Compound Sentence*.

Examples

The problem was difficult, but I finally found the answer.
It was either a human mistake, or a computer error.
Drive quickly, else you will not overtake him.

3. A sentence that contains one main clause or independent clause and at least one subordinate clause or dependent clause is called a *Complex Sentence*.

Examples

Although I am tired, I want to watch the late night movie.
We had to go outside when the room became too claustrophobic.
I went to the party because I was invited.

[II] Phrase

A Phrase is a group of words that makes partial sense, and generally lacks a verb. Mostly, a phrase does not contain a subject and a predicate.

Examples

a bed of roses; a tough battle; great beauty; as happy as; etc.

Types of Phrases:

1. Adjective Phrase:

The phrase that does the work of an adjective.

E.g., *flag of India; of red colour; of great worth; through the tunnel; etc.*

2. Adverb Phrase:

The group of words that does the work of an adverb.

E.g., *in a brave manner; with great speed; without any care; on the whole; etc.*

3. Noun Phrase:

The group of words that does the work of a noun.

E.g., *late to bed; trekking mountains; etc.*

Examples

I enjoy *reading* books.

My hope to *win the match* will never succeed.

4. Prepositional Phrase:

A prepositional phrase starts with a preposition and is followed by objects, which are either nouns or pronouns. Many prepositional phrases have adjectival or adverbial functions.

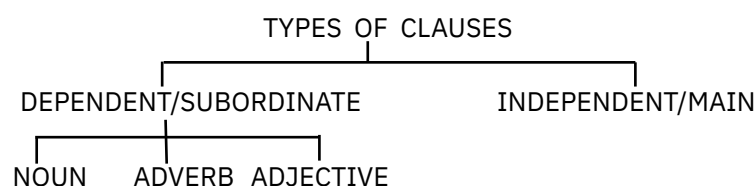
E.g., *by the sea, off the coast, on the shelf*

Example

He was standing *off the coast* when the cargo ship harboured.

[II] Clauses

A clause is a group of words consisting of a subject, a predicate and a verb. Sometimes, the subject is not explicitly given. A clause is either a whole sentence, or in effect, a sentence within a sentence.



Types of Clauses:

1. Independent/Main Clause

A main clause is the one which is independent and conveys the meaning by itself. It can stand by itself as a grammatically viable simple sentence.

Example

Rekha didn't know that the cat ran through the yard.

Here *Rekha, didn't know* is the main clause because it conveys an idea that is complete in itself.

Multiple independent clauses can be joined (usually with a comma or a coordinating conjunction) to form a compound sentence.

Examples

He is leaving as he is in a hurry.

Please come with me otherwise you shall be the loser.

I don't want to tell you the truth, I am scared.

In all these sentences, if we remove the conjunctions we see that the two parts of the sentences can stand alone.

Independent clauses can also be joined with the help of conjunctive adverbs.

Examples

Firstly, binge eating affects health; secondly, it affects neuro-transmission.

The poet was perplexed by the beauty of the mountains; in fact, he kept standing there for a long time.

2. Dependent Clause/Subordinate Clause

Dependent clause (which is also referred to as subordinate clause) cannot stand alone in a sentence and depends on the main clause, which it often modifies. It usually begins with subordinating conjunctions. A sentence with an independent clause and any number of dependent clauses is referred to as a complex sentence. A sentence with two or more independent clauses and at least one dependent clause is referred to as a *Compound-Complex sentence*.

Examples

My brother cried because he scraped his knee. (Compound sentence)

Subjects: *My brother, he*

Predicates: *cried, scraped his knee*

Subordinating conjunction: *because*

When she told me (that) I had won the contest, I cried, but I didn't shout. (compound-complex sentence)

Subjects: *she, I, I, I*

Predicates: *told me, won the contest, cried, didn't shout*

Subordinating conjunctions: *When, that* (understood)

Coordinating conjunction: *but*

The sentence actually contains two dependent clauses: *When she told me* is one; the other is (that) *I had won the contest*. The *that* is understood to precede *I had won*, and functions as a subordinating conjunction.

Types of Dependent Clauses

There are a few types of dependent clauses, each of which functions as a part of speech: *noun clause, adjective clause, and adverb clause*.

A. Noun Clause:

A noun clause is a group of words, which contains a subject and a predicate of its own, and does the work of a noun.

Example

It hurts me that she has spoken offensively.

It hurts me is the main clause with *it* as the subject. *That she has spoken offensively* is the dependent noun clause and is the object of the verb *hurts*.

Since a noun clause does the work of a noun it can be:

1. The subject of a verb: *Where destiny will take me* is uncertain.
2. The object of a transitive verb: She says *that she won't go*.
3. The object of a preposition: Listen carefully to *what I am going to say*.
4. In Apposition to a Noun or Pronoun: It is feared *that he will kill his brother*.
5. The Complement of a verb of incomplete predication: This is *where she lives*.

B. Adjective Clause:

An adjective clause is a group of words which contains a verb, a subject and a predicate of its own and does the work of an adjective. Adjective clauses generally modify antecedent noun phrases, and, thus, do not begin a sentence.

Examples

He is the man *who fought till the end*.

The dress, *which is brown*, is mine.

The course *that I am doing* is tough.

Case 1

An adjective clause is generally introduced by a relative pronoun or by a relative adverb.

Examples

The house *where the cylinder had burst* is nearby.

The reason *why she took up this project* is obvious.

Case 2

Sometimes, however, a relative pronoun introduces a coordinate clause.

Example:

I met Harish, *who* gave me your phone.

Here we are using the relative pronoun *who* to introduce a coordinate clause.

Case 3

Sometimes the relative pronoun or the relative adverb, introducing an adjective clause is not stated explicitly.

Example

Where is the money (which) he left for me?

Case 4

But is equivalent to a relative pronoun followed by *not* and serves to introduce an adjective clause.

Example

There was not a single lady present *but* feared the imminent catastrophe. (Here *but* means *who did not fear*)

Case 5

Than is sometimes used as a preposition before a relative pronoun in the adjective clause.

Example

We shall follow the Queen's English *than* which we feel is a better language.

Case 6

The infinitive with *to* is often used as the equivalent of an adjective clause.

Example

I have the whole exercise *to* learn. (which I must learn)

C. Adverb Clause

An Adverb Clause refers to a group of words which contains a subject and a predicate of its own and does the work of an adverb.

Examples

He won the elections *because people loved him*. (Adverb clause of reason)

When she saw the dog, she ran away. (Adverb clause of time)

If you sincerely work hard, you will definitely pass the exam. (Adverb clause of condition)

Kinds of Adverb Clauses:

Adverb Clauses can be further subdivided as follows:

i. Adverb Clauses of Time

They are introduced by subordinating conjunctions like *whenever, when, while, after, before, since, as, etc.*

Examples

You can go to play *when you finish your homework.*

Please concentrate *while you are working.*

From the time he has come there has been no peace at home.

ii. Adverb Clauses of Place

They are introduced by subordinating conjunctions like *where, whereas, whence, whither, there, etc.*

Examples

He has gone into hiding *where no one can find him.*

His dog follows him *wherever he goes.*

She want to live in a place *where there is no pollution.*

iii. Adverb Clauses of Purpose

They are introduced by subordinating conjunctions like *that, in order that, so that, lest, etc.*

Examples

He fought till his last breath, *so that his family could be saved.*

He studied hard *in order to pass the exam.*

She usually creeps softly into the room, *lest he wakes up.* (*Lest* is followed by the infinitive without the preposition *to*)

iv. Adverb Clauses of Cause or Reason

They are introduced by subordinating conjunctions like *because, as, since, that, etc.*

Examples

He was arrested *because he instigated riots in the city.*

I could not go to the party, *as I was not feeling well.*

She missed the play *since she was out of town.*

v. Adverb Clauses of Condition:

They are introduced by subordinating conjunctions like *if, whether, unless, etc.*

Examples

If you get time, please come for the party.

Unless there is peace, we will not survive.

Whether you like the medicine or not, you must take it.

vi. Adverb Clauses of Result or Consequence

They are introduced by subordinating conjunctions like *that*. Frequently, *so* or *such* precedes *that* in the main clause.

Examples

She danced in such a manner *that everyone was amazed*.
The rains were so heavy *that many people lost their homes*.
He came home so late *that there was no food left for him*.

vii. Adverb Clauses of Comparison

They are introduced by subordinating conjunctions like *than* or relative adverbs like *as*. The comparison may be one of degree or manner.

Examples

She is more intelligent *than all other students in her class*.
This year's budget was more controversial *than that which was presented last year*.
The novel did not end *as I expected*.

viii. Adverb Clauses of Supposition or Concession

They are introduced by subordinating conjunctions like *though*, *although*, *even if*, etc.

Examples

Although he was weak in studies, he passed the exam.
Though she was carrying an umbrella, she got wet.
Even if he is unable to make it, I shall definitely come.

Modifiers

Modifiers are words, phrases or clauses that refer to a particular word or word group and tell us something more about that word or word group. Essentially, modifiers breathe life into sentences. Though they do not modify/change the meaning of other words, yet they add more meaning to their subjects.

A sentence without a modifier: The herb is sold throughout the country.

A sentence with a modifier: Known for its curative properties, the herb is sold throughout the country.

Modifiers can be adjectives, adverbs, participial phrases, prepositional phrases, infinitive phrases, adjective clauses and adverb clauses. Without modifiers, sentences would be no fun to read. Carefully chosen, well-placed modifiers allow one to express his/her unique take on the situation he/she is capturing through words.

Types of Modifiers:

1. Dangling Modifier:

A sentence is regarded as dangling if the sentence has a modifier but the doer or the subject is not clear. Hence, the sentence is dangling.

Example

Having completed the task, the book was read.

Here the doer is some person who is not mentioned at all. So we rewrite the sentence as:

Having completed the task, he/she read the book.

Example

Being a rainy day, the children could not go out.

Here the subject is missing. So we rewrite the sentence as: It being a rainy day, the children could not go out.

Example

To express their disapproval, the gates were shut again.

Who wished to express their disapproval?

When one reads the above sentence, it looks as though the gates are expressing their disapproval. In the absence of a clear-cut doer of the action of *expressing disapproval*, we must rewrite the sentence by introducing a subject: *They*.

Hence, the correct sentences would be: "To express their disapproval, they shut the gates again." or "They expressed their disapproval by shutting the gates again."

Note

A word or a phrase or a clause should be placed closest to the noun/pronoun that it relates to.

2. Misplaced Modifier

A misplaced modifier is simply a word, a phrase or a clause describing something but not placed near the word it is supposed to modify. Instead, it is placed just in the wrong place. Unlike the dangling modifier where the subject of the modifier is missing, in the case of the misplaced modifier the subject is present, but misplaced. Some modifiers, especially simple modifiers like *only*, *just*, *nearly*, *barely*, etc., slip into the wrong place in a sentence.

Example

I want somebody to deliver these documents *with good character*.

Now, the phrase *with good character* can only refer to the person. But, here the implication is that the documents should have good character!

We rectify this by placing the modifier (phrase) correctly.

I want somebody *with good character* to deliver these documents. (correct)

Example

The waiter served dinner to the guests *on brand new plates*.

It seems as though the guests are *on brand new plates*. This, therefore is clearly a case of misplaced modifier. The phrase (modifier) *on brand new plates* must be placed next to the noun *dinner*. i.e., The waiter served dinner *on brand new plates* to the guests. (correct)

Parallel Construction

Parallel construction in grammar refers to a balance of two or more similar words, phrases or clauses. The correct application of parallelism is essential because it improves not only one's writing style but also the readability of the written matter.

Parallel construction must be kept in mind with respect to:

1. Degrees of comparison or contrast
2. Conjunctions
3. Tenses and compound verb expressions
4. Infinitives, participles and gerunds
5. Words in a series expressing similar functions

Parallelism adds emphasis to a sentence by the repetition of similar forms. One must ensure that parallel elements of a sentence begin in the same way.

Examples

Maria likes *cooking, jogging, reading*. (Repetition of gerund forms)

David enjoys working with *honest* and *committed* people. (Repetition of adjectives)

1. Parallelism of Degrees of Comparison or Contrast

In sentences where there is a comparison between two objects having equal quality or quantity, the positive degree of comparison is used. Sometimes the object of comparison is not repeated.

Examples

- My income is less than my wife. (incorrect)
(My income is compared wrongly with my wife, instead of her income!)
My income is less than my wife's/My income is less than that of my wife. (correct)
- Unlike his friends, his performance shows a thorough preparation. (incorrect)
(His friends are contrasted wrongly with his performance)
- Unlike the performance of his friends, his performance shows a thorough preparation. (correct)
- His personal life was as good as her. (incorrect)
His personal life was as good as her personal life. (correct)

Parallelism should be maintained between two elements that are in comparative or superlative mode.

Examples

The urban population of India is much less than Brazil. (Incorrect)

The urban population of India is much less than that of Brazil. (Correct)

2. Parallelism of Conjunctions

- Coordinate conjunctions like *and* and *but* are sometimes used parallelly to connect two similar words or expressions.

Examples

Ritesh is a *good batsman but a poor bowler*. (Here *good batsman* and *poor bowler* are two parallel expressions (in contrast) connected with the help of coordinate conjunction *but*.)

He is *wise and honest*. (Here *wise* and *honest* are two parallel adjectives connected with the help of coordinate conjunction *and*.) Correlative conjunctions or paired conjunctions are expressed parallelly in a sentence. The commonly used pairs are *either or*, *neither nor*, *both and*, *not only ... but also*, *hardly ... when*, *scarcely ... when*, *no sooner ... than*, *though ... yet*, *whether or*.

Examples

You are *neither* helpful *nor* understanding.

Either accept your crime *or* face the consequences.

Examples

John wants either money or to be famous. (incorrect)

(Here, the use of the noun *money*, and the infinitive form *to be famous*, makes the sentence wrong. One must use correct parallelism by using either the noun forms of both or the infinitive forms of both.)

John wants to be either rich or famous. (correct)

3. Parallelism of Tenses:

Often, we change tenses incorrectly and unnecessarily, thus making grammatical mistakes. One must take a moment and think about the logic of the sentence.

Examples

He *ran* to the shopkeeper and *was asking* him to change the shirt immediately. (incorrect)

(The sentence is incorrect since it shows an inconsistency in the use of tenses; past indefinite verb form *ran* is not parallel to past continuous verb form *was asking*.)

He *ran* to the shopkeeper and *asked* him to change the shirt immediately. (correct)

In parallel construction, it is also very important to spot the key words that indicate time and work around them.

Example

Formerly, languages *were taught* as per theory, but now conversational skills *are taught* as well. (correct)

The change in tense as per the key words — *formerly ... were taught*, *now ... are taught*, shows a good understanding of linguistic skills.)

Another example of parallel construction in a sentence is when compound verbs express an action taking place at the same time or in the same tense. When this happens, the verb or the verb form ought to be consistent.

Examples

Gavin *sings* and *is playing* the piano as well. (incorrect)

(This sentence is incorrect from the point of view of parallel construction since it uses the verbs in different forms.)

Gavin *sings* and *plays* the piano as well. (correct)

Gavin *is singing* and *is playing* the piano as well. (correct)

4. Parallelism of Infinitives, Participles and Gerunds:

Sometimes, when ideas or functions are compared, one must remember to maintain a parallel structure in gerunds, participles and infinitives.

Example

Sasha likes *to study* in the afternoon and then *playing* later on in the evening. (incorrect)

The aforementioned expression is incorrect since two ideas are compared, using wrong verb forms; *to study* is not parallel to gerund *playing*. The rule is: all verb forms should be parallel: infinitive and infinitive; gerund and gerund; participle and participle. Hence, the correct sentences should be: Sasha likes *to study* (infinitive) in the afternoon and then *to play* (infinitive) later on in the evening. Sasha likes *studying* (gerund) in the afternoon and then *playing* (gerund) later on in the evening.

5. Parallelism of Words Expressing Similar Functions:

Parallelism is also important when there are many words in a series expressing somewhat similar functions in a sentence.

Examples

We liked the film Titanic because there was action, love, romance and some songs as well. (incorrect)

In the given sentence, there is no need to bring a noun-modifier like *some* since the words (nouns) are all in a series.

The correct expression would be:

We liked the film Titanic because there was action, love, romance and songs as well.

Note

There are words like *to, by, in, for* (prepositions), *a, an, the* (definite/indefinite articles), and *that, who, which, because, when* (introductory words) that help to maintain parallelism in a sentence.

A word that begins one clause must begin the others as well.

Examples

Mrs. Mirza loves to complain about *the* food and service in our hotel. (incorrect)

Mrs. Mirza loves to complain about *the* food and *the* service in our hotel. (correct)

Some Examples of Parallel Construction

- Coming from a joint family and that I am the youngest of the children, I have always been pampered. (incorrect)
Coming from a joint family and being the youngest of the children, I have always been pampered. (correct; *coming* is parallel to *being*)
- My cousin who is young but very responsibility takes pains to set the breakfast table. (incorrect)
My cousin who is young but very responsible takes pains to set the breakfast table. (correct; *young* is parallel to *responsible*)
- These girls are always arguing over whose job it is to put the beds and cleaning the kitchen. (incorrect)
These girls are always arguing over whose job it is to put the beds and to clean the kitchen. (correct; *to put* is parallel to *to clean*)
- People are usually affected by one of the following—greed, joy, pain or they are poor. (incorrect)
People are usually affected by one of the following—greed, joy, pain or poverty. (correct; *greed*, *joy*, *pain* and *poverty* are used parallelly)
- The trainer advised the players that they should get good sleep, that they should not overeat and to do warm-up exercises before the game. (incorrect)
The trainer advised the players to get good sleep, not to overeat and to do warm-up exercises before the game. (correct; *to get* is parallel to *not to overeat* and *to do*)
- Carl picked up his boots, he picked up his belt and jacket too before he left. (incorrect)
Carl picked up his boots, belt and jacket before he left. (correct; *boots*, *belt* and *jacket* are used parallelly, and the verb *picked* is not repeated)
- Peter went to work a bistro and to a mall, all in one day. (incorrect)
Peter went to work to a bistro and to a mall, all in one day. (correct; *to a bistro* is parallel to *to a mall*)
- The biologist was interested and excited about the new advances in medicine. (incorrect)
The biologist was interested in and excited about the new advances in medicine. (correct; *interested in* and *excited about* are parallel idiomatic expressions.)
- In psychotherapy, I think both talking and to listen are equally essential. (incorrect)
In psychotherapy, I think both talking and listening are equally essential. (correct; *talking* is parallel to *listening*)
- This bike is not only fast but also it is safe to ride. (incorrect)
This bike is not only fast but also safe. (correct; *fast* is parallel to *safe*)

- Joslyn is gifted not only as a guitarist but also at writing songs. (incorrect)
Joslyn is gifted not only as a guitarist but also as a lyricist. (correct; *not only as a* is parallel to *but also as a, guitarist* is parallel to *lyricist*)

- Jennifer has both experienced the taste of happiness and the pain of loneliness. (incorrect)
Jennifer has experienced both the taste of happiness and the pain of loneliness. (correct; *taste of happiness* is parallel to *pain of loneliness*) (The word defining the two parallel experiences follows the main verb *experienced*.)

- The eminent journalist wrote a series of articles on Dogri art and its people. (incorrect)
The eminent journalist wrote a series of articles on Dogri art and on its people. (correct; *on Dogri* is parallel to *on its people*)

- Melissa needs financial independence and to find love. (incorrect)
Melissa needs financial independence and love. (correct; *financial independence* is parallel to *love*)
Melissa needs to achieve financial independence and to find love. (correct; *to achieve financial independence* is parallel to *to find love*)

- In monsoons, summer or in winter ... (incorrect)
In monsoons, summer or winter ... (correct; *monsoons* is parallel to *summer* is parallel to *winter*)
In monsoons, in summer or in winter ... (correct; *in monsoons* is parallel to *in summer* is parallel to *in winter*) (The preposition *in* is repeated to maintain parallelism.)

- The war was both expensive and very damaging. (incorrect)
The war was both expensive and damaging. (correct; *expensive* is parallel to *damaging*; *both* is parallel to *and*) (One should avoid using additional defining words like *very*.)

- Carl's car is more spacious than Zeeshan. (incorrect)
Carl's car is more spacious than Zeeshan's. (correct; *Carl's car* is parallel to *Zeeshan's car*)

- In the film, we empathise with Billy more than Patty. (incorrect)
In the film, we empathise with Billy more than with Patty. (correct; *with Billy* is parallel to *with Patty*)

- His father is stronger than Zoya. (incorrect)
His father is stronger than Zoya's. / His father is stronger than Zoya's father. (correct; *his father* is parallel to *Zoya's father*)

- In the play *Dog in the Manger*, one doesn't know whether the hero sees the original dog or a new one. (incorrect)
In the play *Dog in the Manger*, one doesn't know whether the hero sees the original dog or he sees a new one. (correct; *the hero sees* is parallel to *he sees*)

- The criminal not only stole all the money but was also stabbing the housekeeper. (incorrect)
The criminal not only stole all the money but also stabbed the housekeeper. (correct; *stole* is parallel to *stabbed*)
- Mr. Mehta is neither my father nor is he my father-in-law. (incorrect)
Mr. Mehta is neither my father nor my father-in-law. (correct; *neither my* is parallel to *nor my*; also, *neither..... nor requires only one verb*)
- In the education fair we read a lot of interesting material, question banks, information handouts and some test series. (incorrect)
In the education fair, we read a lot of interesting material, question banks, information handouts and test series. (correct; *interesting material, question banks, information handouts, and test series* are all singular elements used parallelly)
- Joseph does not like to study with Freda as much as Reeta. (incorrect)
Joseph does not like to study with Freda as much as he likes to with Reeta. (correct; *does not like to* is parallel to *as much as he likes to*)
- Vishal not only broke his family tradition but also was destroying his mother's faith in him. (incorrect)
Vishal not only broke his family tradition but also destroyed his mother's faith in him. (correct; *broke* is parallel to *destroyed*)
- Hal seems to be an irresponsible prince but Hotspur was the traitor. (incorrect)
Hal seems to be an irresponsible prince but Hotspur is the traitor. (correct; *seems* is parallel to *is*)
Hal seemed to be an irresponsible prince but Hotspur was the traitor. (correct; *seemed* is parallel to *was*)
- Ingrid prefers to fight criminal cases than preparing legal documents. (incorrect)
Ingrid prefers fighting criminal cases to preparing legal documents. (correct; *fighting* is parallel to *preparing*)
- The French, the Italians, Germans and Portuguese love to eat meat. (incorrect)
The French, the Italians, the Germans and the Portuguese love to eat meat. (correct; *the French, the Italian, the German and the Portuguese* are used parallelly)



CLASS EXERCISE

Directions: Given below is a list of expressions. Identify the phrases and the clauses and place them in the appropriate column in the table given below.

my mother; blue and green dress; I like the dress; it was irrelevant; after the match; beyond imagination; I cannot imagine; as an after effect; the ball that hit you; termination of the project; a final verdict was given; he knew that I won't come

PHRASES	CLAUSES

Directions: Given below is a set of sentences. Read each sentence and

Mark (1), if it is a Simple Sentence.

Mark (2), if it is Compound Sentence.

Mark (3), if it is a Complex Sentence.

Mark (4), if it is a Compound-Complex Sentence.

1. She won the race.
2. I go to the park every day.
3. I like to play football, but I get tired very soon.
4. The boy with brown hair has met with an accident.
5. He finished reading the book and he switched on the television.
6. I like to go shopping, but my husband loves to watch television.
7. I like stories that do not have too many characters.
8. I may attend the party or I may go for a movie.
9. She enjoyed the food but she did not like the way it was served.
10. Meera is studying because she has a test tomorrow.

Directions: *Given below are sets of sentences that present a similar idea. Read them carefully and identify the sentences that convey the idea aptly.*

11.

- (1) Being an honest person, stealing money from the office could not be resorted to.
- (2) Being an honest person, the accountant could not resort to stealing money from his office.

12.

- (1) While I was standing outside her room, I heard that my mother intended to throw a surprise birthday party for me.
- (2) I heard that my mother intended to throw a surprise birthday party for me while I was standing outside her room.

13.

- (1) I promised my son when his class got over I would take him to the park.
- (2) When his class got over, I promised my son I would take him to the park.
- (3) I promised my son I would take him to the park when his class got over.

Directions: *Identify the modifier errors in the following sentences and correct them.*

- 14. Mohan has taken pictures of his daughter playing in her crib using a camera.
- 15. We can stitch a suit that fits and flatters you in just a week.
- 16. The ancient coins of the Mauryan era commanded their attention on entering the exhibit.
- 17. Being a nice human being, a part of his income goes to charity.
- 18. When I was working as an accountant only she had shown me the ropes.
- 19. Having arrived late for class, a written explanation had to be submitted to the principal.
- 20. My neighbour's daughter goes to school, of just five years of age, in a school bus.
- 21. After marriage, Seema told us at the farewell party that she will be a perfect home-maker.
- 22. Sick with the flu, a bowl of chicken soup was the only food that could be eaten.
- 23. Pulling the brakes, the bicycle skidded into the tree fence.

Directions: *Read the following sentences carefully and identify whether the following sentences have been constructed correctly, and make corrections where necessary.*

- 24. Sarita is beautiful, intelligent and is a strong woman.
- 25. This publication caters to that segment of society, which is educated, hard working and better living is the focus for it.
- 26. To the farmer, land not only generates income and is also a source of life security.

27. Hardly had he put the phone down than it rang again.
28. Scarcely had they ceased to lament the loss of their benefactor and set foot in the city than they perceived that the earth trembled under their feet.
29. We have to either work for good governance and healthy society otherwise stop complaining and stay away from all the issues that affect society.
30. Both Meera as well as her brother were invited to the party.
31. He could neither marry Ophelia or by explaining the cause of his alienation wound her mind.
32. No sooner had she turned her head before the rear of the car started to move to the right.
33. They would either squander all the money their father had left else through foolish investment decisions lose the same.

Directions: Choose the most logical and grammatically correct option from the four choices.

34.

- 1) I wrote an essay about *Titanic* in my film appreciation class.
- 2) In my film appreciation class, I wrote an essay about *Titanic*.
- 3) I wrote an essay in my film appreciation class about *Titanic*.
- 4) Both (1) and (2)

35.

- 1) Children whose parents fight often feel depressed.
- 2) Children whose parents often fight feel depressed.
- 3) Children whose parents fight feel depressed often.
- 4) Both (2) and (3)

Directions: In each question, there are five sentences or parts of sentences that form a paragraph. Identify the sentence(s) or part(s) of sentence(s) that is/are incorrect in terms of grammar and usage. Then, choose the most appropriate option.

36.

- A. Without appropriate training for managing their lump sum payment
 - B. and appropriate investment channels being absent,
 - C. it became common for peasants to end up with no land to farm,
 - D. to support themselves they had no income stream,
 - E. and no job skills to compete in tight urban job markets.
- 1) A and C 2) B and D 3) B and E 4) A and D

37.

- A. While his life was less than idyllic at times and
 - B. many people were angered by him, he made notable
 - C. and generous contributions to the people and institutions
 - D. who supported him in his life, including building
 - E. a new library for King's College, Canterbury, England.
- 1) Only B
 - 2) Only D
 - 3) B and D
 - 4) All the parts are correct

Directions: *In each of the following sentences, a part has been underlined. Beneath each sentence, four different ways of phrasing the underlined part have been indicated. Choose the best alternative from among the four. (Past CAT questions)*

38. His mother made great sacrifices to educate him, moving house on three occasions, and severing the thread on her loom's shuttle whenever Mencius neglected his lessons, to make him understand the need to persevere.
- 1) severing the thread on her loom's shuttle whenever Mencius neglected his lessons, to make him understand the need to persevere.
 - 2) severed the thread on her loom's shuttle whenever Mencius neglected his lessons to make him understand the need to persevere.
 - 3) severed the thread on her loom's shuttle whenever Mencius neglected his lessons to make him understand the need for persevering.
 - 4) severing the thread on her loom's shuttle whenever Mencius neglected his lessons, to make them understand the need to persevere.
39. Creativity in any field regarded not only as valuable for itself but also as a service to the nation.
- 1) Creativity in any field regarded not only as valuable for itself but also as a service to the nation.
 - 2) Creativity in any field is not regarded only as valuable on its own, but also as a service to the nation.
 - 3) Creativity, in any field, is not only regarded as valuable, but also as a service to the nation.
 - 4) Creativity in any field is regarded not only as valuable in itself but also as a service to the nation.



PRACTICE EXERCISE-1

Directions: *Given below is a set of sentences. Read each sentence and*

Mark (1), if it is a Simple Sentence.

Mark (2), if it is Compound Sentence.

Mark (3), if it is a Complex Sentence.

Mark (4), if it is a Compound-Complex Sentence.

1. I tried to catch the 10 a.m. flight to Delhi and my friend tried to catch the 10.15 a.m. flight to Chennai.
2. After we finished our presentation, we proceeded for lunch.
3. When he submitted his dissertation, he forgot to give his research guide the synopsis of his study.
4. The servant lived in the outhouse, but the land-owner, who knew he was superior, lived inside the mansion.
5. He finished his work and rushed to the drawing room to switch on the TV when he heard his mother calling.
6. I will bake a cake today.
7. Though Jaya prefers watching social drama, she watched a new comedy film, and she enjoyed it thoroughly.
8. She jumped and made faces at the children.
9. Today, I visited an online seller, but I could not complete my transaction.
10. He returned the book after he noticed the missing pages.

Directions: *Identify the modifier errors in the following sentences and correct them.*

11. Reaching into her wallet, the Rs.100 note flashed at her kid brother.
12. While watering the plants, water was splashed all over.
13. After months of making arrangements, our fashion show was finally presented.
14. Returning from a hectic day at the clinic, your home should be a place to relax.
15. Smashed flat by a passing truck, Shwetha gloomily took what was left of the doll.
16. To gain attention, six earrings are worn by Sheila.
17. The advertising firm that had been in the news recently declared bankruptcy.
18. As her teachers had recommended, starting to go for music classes and thorough enjoyment was experienced.

19. She forgot to collect her certificates in a hurry from her school.
20. In *The Rime of the Ancient Mariner*, the mariner shot the albatross with a crossbow that had brought bad luck to the ship.

Directions: Choose the most logical and grammatically correct option from the four choices.

21.

- 1) After failing to attend court several times, a federal judge sent a legal notice.
- 2) After failing to attend court several times, a legal notice was sent by a federal judge to him.
- 3) After he failed to attend court several times, a federal judge sent him a legal notice.
- 4) Both (2) and (3)

22.

- 1) Dev did his homework during class on his notebook.
- 2) On his notebook, Dev did his homework during class.
- 3) Sitting in the class, Dev did his homework on his notebook.
- 4) Both (2) and (3)

23.

- 1) Out of breath, the short sprint was finally finished.
- 2) Out of breath, he finally finished the short sprint.
- 3) He was out of breath by the time he finally finished the short sprint.
- 4) Both (2) and (3)

24.

- 1) Literature critics have been debating for more than 100 years over claims that Shakespeare's plays were in fact written by a woman.
- 2) Literature critics have been debating over claims that Shakespeare's plays were in fact written for more than 100 years by a woman.
- 3) Literature critics have been debating over claims that Shakespeare's plays were in fact written by a woman for more than 100 years.
- 4) Literature critics have been debating over claims for more than 100 years that Shakespeare's plays were in fact written by a woman.

25.

- 1) We decided that during the holidays, we would either visit my aunt in Kolkata or my sister in Kashmir.
- 2) We decided that during the holidays, either we would visit my aunt in Kolkata or my sister in Kashmir.
- 3) We decided that during the holidays, we would visit either my aunt in Kolkata or my sister in Kashmir.
- 4) Both (2) and (3)

26.

- 1) After reading the original story, the movie based on it seems unconvincing.
- 2) The movie based on the story seems unconvincing after reading the original story.
- 3) After reading the original story, the movie based on it seems unconvincing to us.
- 4) None of the above

27.

- 1) My brother almost researched for a month on the flower valley project.
- 2) My brother researched for a month almost on the flower valley project.
- 3) My brother researched for almost a month on the flower valley project.
- 4) Both (2) and (3)

28.

- 1) The teacher told his students eventually all marks would be converted to grades.
- 2) Eventually the teacher told his students all marks would be converted to grades.
- 3) The teacher told his students that eventually all marks would be converted to grades.
- 4) Both (2) and (3)

Directions: In each question, there are five sentences or parts of sentences that form a paragraph. Identify the sentence(s) or part(s) of sentence(s) that is/are incorrect in terms of grammar and usage. Then, choose the most appropriate option.

29.

- A. For the young girls and women
 - B. brought to life in these stories,
 - C. the possibility of change, of starting anew,
 - D. is both as terrifying and filled with promise
 - E. like the ocean that separates them from their homes in India.
- 1) Only C
 - 2) Only D
 - 3) Only E
 - 4) All the parts are correct

30.

- A. In *Memoirs of a Geisha*, we enter a world where appearances are paramount,
- B. where women are trained to beguile the most powerful men,
- C. and here one scorns at love as an illusion.
- D. It is a unique and triumphant work of fiction – at once romantic,
- E. evokes eroticism, suspenseful – and completely unforgettable.

- 1) A and D 2) B and C 3) C and E 4) B and E

31.

- A. In such societies, women were not taken seriously when it came
- B. to partaking in any activity that did not pertain to typical duties
- C. of the common housewife such as cooking, cleaning, sewing,
- D. and took care of children. They were typically considered
- E. unsuitable and incapable of performing the same actions and tasks as men.

- 1) B and D 2) A and E 3) D and E 4) B, C and D

32.

- A. The face of the heath, by its mere complexion, added
- B. half an hour to the evening; it could in like manner
- C. retard the dawn, sadden the noon, anticipating the frowning
- D. of storms scarcely generated, and intensified the opacity of
- E. a moonless midnight to make it a cause of shaking and dread.

- 1) A and B 2) B and D 3) C and D 4) C and E

Directions: *In each of the following sentences, a part has been underlined. Beneath each sentence, four different ways of phrasing the underlined part have been indicated. Choose the best alternative from among the four.*

33. The type of vegetation near water bodies depends on the soil of the water body, what the purity of the water is and the location of the water body.

- 1) depends on the soil of the water body, what the purity of the water is and the location of the water body.
- 2) depends on the soil of the water body, the purity of the water and the location of the water body.
- 3) depends on the soil of the water body, the water's purity and the location of the water body.
- 4) depends on the soil of the water body, the purity of the water and it's location.

34. A literary sensation and runaway bestseller, this brilliant debut novel tells with seamless authenticity and lyrics that are exquisite the true confessions of one of the country's most celebrated actresses.
- 1) A literary sensation and runaway bestseller, this brilliant debut novel tells with seamless authenticity and lyrics that are exquisite the true confessions of one of the country's most celebrated actresses.
 - 2) A literature sensation and runaway bestseller, this brilliant debut novel tells with seamless authenticity and exquisite lyricism the true confessions of one of the countries most celebrated actresses.
 - 3) A literature sensation and runaway bestseller, this brilliant debut novel tells with seamless authentic and exquisite lyricism the true confessions of one of the country's most celebrated actresses.
 - 4) A literary sensation and runaway bestseller, this brilliant debut novel tells with seamless authenticity and exquisite lyricism the true confessions of one of the country's most celebrated actresses.



PRACTICE EXERCISE-2

Directions: *Identify the modifier errors in the following sentences and correct them.*

1. The teacher hit the boy with a book.
2. As an actress, a desire for scaling new creative heights was always present in her.
3. The company is planning to set up a gymnasium within the office premises for its employees, with all modern facilities.
4. Staggering like a drunkard, the aching body could not be hauled upright.
5. Our products are marketed throughout India, that enjoy an excellent goodwill.

Directions: *Read the following sentences carefully and identify whether the following sentences have been constructed correctly, and make corrections where necessary.*

6. Students should read such books as fill them with noble thoughts.
7. The climate in New Zealand is better than any country in the world; yet vast areas of good land are lying idle, growing weeds and rubbish.
8. The format of the new journal is more pleasing than its predecessor and should appeal to a wider public.
9. Shiv is a fun-loving person who enjoys playing cricket, watching movies and loves to read business magazines.
10. After the renovation, the elevator now looks safer, stronger and more secure.
11. Though she was in a hurry, she completed the work at hand quickly, accurately and in a thorough manner.
12. He was so overpowered by his kidnapper that he did not have the strength to shout, to strike a blow and made an attempt to free himself.
13. With the aim of meeting her parents, she walked barefoot to the station, purchased a ticket with her hard-earned money and was waiting eagerly for the train to arrive.
14. Either you can go for the picnic or attend the class.
15. India is a land of diverse landscape and heritage that is rich.
16. When I was in school, I learnt swimming and how to dance.
17. One is still fascinated by the film for these reasons: striking imagery, gripping scenes, bright dialogue and characters that are drawn exquisitely.
18. After her husband's death she was worried and anxious for her daughter's future.
19. On the eve of the final examination, the education counsellor told the students that they should eat a light meal, that they should sleep properly and to not panic unnecessarily.
20. I expected that she would not divulge the secret to my family members but my brother was informed of the same by her.

Directions: *Identify the phrases and name them.*

21. We stood by the seaside.
22. The Pacific is an ocean with immense depth.
23. He is determined to lead his followers.
24. She spoke in an evasive manner.
25. She completed the work in haste.

Directions: *Identify the main clause and the subordinate clause and also state the kind of subordinate clause.*

26. Many of us are made to believe that dinosaurs exist.
27. They ran wherever they could.
28. How the promoter got the contract, we have no clue.
29. The hand that rocks the cradle rules the world.
30. He is quite sure that he will win the chess competition again this time.

Directions: *Identify the errors of modifiers in the sentences and write the correct form.*

31. He was informed that he had been selected for the course by his sister.
32. After the completion of dinner, a long stroll was taken.
33. After debating over the issue for hours, a decision was reached at.
34. The trekkers were thrilled to see a field of daffodils climbing up the hill.

35. He noticed a dog gnawing a bone on his way to the market.

Directions: *Identify the errors in each sentence and correct them.*

36. Can your dog run as fast as me?

37. His horse is stronger than Zoya.

38. Our bungalow seems to be as modern as you.

39. Kedar's performance this year has been better than Amit.

40. It was both a long journey and very tiring.

41. This is not a time for words but action.

42. Either you must accept my fees or give me an explanation for not doing so.

43. I believe him because he said he was going to return my money.

44. Tarun is not just good at playing cricket but also played golf.

45. I like to officiate basketball than playing basketball.



PRACTICE EXERCISE-3

THEORY

CLASS EXERCISE

PRACTICE EXERCISE

Directions: *Identify the phrases and name them.*

1. Somehow, we do not enjoy watching television.
2. He was too slow to end the work in time.
3. It was an act of cowardice.
4. She slept atop the table.
5. He is a man of wisdom.

Directions: *Identify the main clause and the subordinate clause and also state the kind of subordinate clause.*

6. She is much younger than I thought.
7. She was so exhausted she could hardly travel further.
8. We should respect people who die fighting for their motherland.
9. There were so many members in the parliament that there were no seats available.
10. When there is a will, there is a way.
11. She preferred only those dresses that were either blue or white.
12. Do what I ask you to do!
13. Though she left home late, she managed to reach office on time.

14. That life is not a bed of roses everyone knows.
15. One should concentrate more while working on a time-bound project.

Directions: *Identify the errors of modifiers in the sentences and write the correct form.*

16. The dog is insane that bites.
17. There is an Indian crown in our city museum that is 4000 years old.
18. The disgruntled party men listened to what their leader said without believing a word of his promises.
19. Being a moonlit night, we decided to see the Taj Mahal.
20. While practising in the auditorium, the announcement was received from the coach.
21. To complete his project on time, John's holidays were spent in the computer lab.
22. Watching the movie alone, the explosion made me jump up.
23. To become a prolific batsman, regular practice is of utmost importance.
24. When performing on stage, microphone should not be placed too near the speaker cones.
25. While describing diverse clausal usages, how to construct correct sentences was also illustrated.

Directions: *Identify the errors in each sentence and correct them.*

26. Clara likes singing carols and to play the mandolin.
27. Jack loves answering queries and to fill out admission forms for us.

28. Purgery, forgery and fraud will result in suspension or even being rusticated from this college.
29. The doors of the castle were not only too long but are also too creaky.
30. Krishna could not convince me that giving is as much a joy as to receive.
31. Shalin believes that Bines is innocent and Verza's book doesn't characterise Bines properly.
32. Shonn was advised either to undergo a surgery or use a wheelchair.
33. I enjoy swimming, running and to jog.
34. One cannot always be worried or terrified of the difficulties in life.
35. The manager taught his client how to stand, how to cry and to talk with fans.
36. Either you can join the army or the air-force.
37. The revamping of the office is neither simple not it will be cheap.
38. When I was in London, I learned piano and how to play the guitar.
39. Father supports my view because, first, its simplicity and second, it is unique.
40. We were either asked to change our flight or to take a train.
41. One should look at the human constitution not as a bundle of faculties and as cycle of activities.
42. Community participation is necessary to build a self-reliant economy and developing a local participatory infrastructure.
43. My research project is more interesting than him.



44. He considered mailing, talking, writing and social network to be the best modes of communication.
45. The pilot stated that the weather was not turbulent, climate was okay, and that the flight was on schedule.

VA-3.5 | PREPOSITIONS, PHRASAL VERBS AND IDIOMS



Prepositions

Introduction

The Preposition as a part of speech is an important component of English language. A preposition is a word or set of words that indicates location (*in, on, under, on top of* etc.) or some other relationship (*like, concerning, about, after, besides, instead of, in accordance with* etc.) between a noun or pronoun and other parts of the sentence.

A preposition always goes with a related noun or pronoun, called the *object of the preposition*; otherwise it's not a preposition.

Examples

We will go home *after* the lecture. (*After* is a preposition; *the lecture* is its object.)

We arrived shortly *after*. (There is no object; *after* is an adverb modifying the verb *arrived*.)

Prepositional Phrase

A prepositional phrase consists of a preposition, a noun or pronoun that serves as the object of the preposition, and, more often than not, an adjective or two that modifies the object.

Prepositional phrases usually tell *when* or *where*: '*in two hours*', '*during the lecture*', '*in the class*,' '*near the window*,' etc.

When a sentence begins with a prepositional phrase, it usually constitutes an introductory modifier. *After the lecture*, the teacher invited us to ask questions.

Prepositional phrases can also perform other functions.

Except the teacher, nobody else was interested in grammar.

Common Prepositions and their function

Prepositions of Time: *in, on, at, for, since* etc. (*In two years, on Monday, at 10 am, since 1970* etc.)

Prepositions of Place (location): *in, on, at* (*in India, on Linking Road, at the station* etc.)

Prepositions of Movement: *to, toward* or *towards* (*to town, toward town, toward disarmament*)

Idiomatic Expressions with Prepositions/Phrasal Verbs

Prepositions combine with other words (verbs, nouns, adjectives) to create a meaning completely different from that of the combining words. When a preposition combines with a verb, often with unexpected meanings, we call it a Phrasal Verb. (For example: *look after* means 'take care of'). The resulting combination (*look after*) creates what amounts to a new verb, which creates problems for those who have English as second language. To make matters worse, the same phrasal verb can have different meanings. *To make out*, for instance, has the following meaning:

1. To complete (something, such as a printed form). Please supply the required information to *make out* a check.
2. To find or grasp the meaning of. She tried to *make out* what had really happened.
3. To form an opinion or idea about. Without any information, how do you *make that out*?
4. To represent. After the elections, the media *made them out* to be losers.
5. To represent or delineate in detail. The painting was so realistic that it *made out* all the details of the garden.
6. To see and identify with difficulty or effort or discern. Can you *make out* a ship through the fog?
7. Get along or fare. How are you *making out* with the new job?
8. To engage in sexual intercourse.

There are over 150 prepositions in English. Here's a list of the most common prepositions:

Above, across, after, against, along, among, around, at, away from
before, behind, below, beneath, beside, between, by
down, during
for, from
in, in front of, inside, into
near, next to
off, of, on, onto, out of, outside, over
to, through, till, toward(s)
under, underneath, until, up etc.

Also, remember that depending on their function in the sentence, the words that are primarily prepositions can also become conjunctions or adverbs or adjectives. Study these examples:

For

A grant *for* studying management (preposition).

I couldn't stay, *for* the area was violent.

On

The book is lying *on* the table (preposition).

Put the new shoes *on* (adverb).

The television is *on* (adjective).

Correct Use of Prepositions

Before using prepositions correctly, it is important to know what different prepositions stand for.

For, since are prepositions of *time*.

At, on, in are prepositions of both *time and place*.

To is a preposition of *movement*.

1. When the object of the preposition is a relative pronoun, the preposition is always placed at the end.

Example

This is the house that he came *to*.

2. Prepositions are frequently placed at the end when the object is an interrogative pronoun or a relative pronoun that is understood.

Examples

What are you playing *with*?

This the building (that) I was talking *about*.

3. We use *at* to talk about a place, *on* to talk about a position above a surface, *in* to talk about a position within a larger area/larger space. However, we sometimes use *on* instead of *in* when we talk about long streets or roads.

Examples

Our house was *on* Princess Street.

Bhusawal is *on* the border of Maharashtra and Madhya Pradesh.

They live *in* that old farmhouse on the hill.

4. *On* is used in speaking of things at rest, *upon* is used to denote things in motion. *Upon* is also used to denote idiomatic and formal expressions.

Examples

Look at all the books *on* your desk!

The dog jumped *upon* the table.

Once *upon* a time, there lived a king.

5. *Till* and *until* are used in case of time, and *to* is used in case of place.

Examples

Until 1918, women in Britain were not allowed to vote.

We went *to* London last year.

6. *In* is used for non-specific times during the day, month, season or a year.

Examples

We will be there *in* a month.

He will complete the task *in* two weeks.

7. *With* often denotes the instrument, and *by* the agent.

Examples

He was shot at close range *with* a pistol by a criminal.

She was frightened *by* the noise.

8. *Since* is used before a noun or a phrase denoting some point of time, and is preceded by a verb in the perfect tense.

Example

I have been very busy *since* I came back from my holiday.

9. *From* is also used before a noun or a phrase denoting some point of time, but, unlike *since*, it is used with all tenses.

Example

He will start working *from* today.

10. *In* is used before a noun denoting a period of time to indicate *at the end of*.

Example

In two hours we will vacate this place.

11. *Beside* means 'by the side of', while *besides* means 'in addition to'. *Besides* is also used as an adverb and more or less in the same sense.

Examples

Come and sit *beside* me.

Besides her novels and poems, she published a number of short stories.

Prepositions in Parallel Form:

When two words or phrases are used in a parallel manner in a sentence and require the same preposition, the preposition doesn't have to be used twice.

Examples

One needs to be present *in* day shift and in night shift. (incorrect)

One needs to be present *in* day shift and night shift. (correct)

He was praised *by* his colleagues and *by* his friends. (incorrect)

He was praised *by* his colleagues and friends. (correct)

SOME COMMON word COMBINATIONS WITH PREPOSITIONS

Prepositions	to	for	with	of	from	in	on
Nouns	access	apology	alliance	result	deliverance	interest	view
	antidote	candidate	comparison	want	inference	confidence	attack
	submission	compensation	conformity	assurance	escape	progress	impression
	indifference	leisure	intimacy	observance	digression	faith	dependence
	encouragement	predilection	acquaintance	failure	abstinence	part	pity

Prepositions	to	for	with	of	from	in	on
Verb	adapt	canvass	bear	acquit	prevent	dabble	deliberate
	adhere	care	disagree	dispose	recover	excel	comment
	belong	alone	cope	boast	refrain	indulge	impose
	refer	mourn	grapple	complain	derive	employ	embark
	contribute	yearn	part	taste	alight	persist	encroach

Prepositions	to	for	with	of	from	in	on
Adjectives & Participles	adjacent	designed	acquainted	apprised	detached	absorbed	based
	contrary	celebrated	conversant	accused	derived	experienced	intent
	disastrous	penitent	convulsed	regardless	distinct	proficient	dependent
	condemned	qualified	fatigued	suspicious	omitted	deficient	
	obliged	eager	satiated	worthy	separated	interested	

Phrasal Verbs

A phrasal verb is a combination of words (a verb + a preposition or verb + adverb) that when used together, usually takes on a different meaning to that of the original verb.

Some verbs when combined with particular prepositions make a new verb. These are called phrasal verbs.

BEAR

The Hurt Locker bore away (won) most of the Oscars at last year's Academy Awards.

He has been able to *bear down* (overthrow, crush) most of his competitors.

The blood report *bears out* (corroborates, confirms) the doctor's tentative, initial diagnosis of hypertension.

I thought he would crumble under the pressure but he has showed that he can *bear up*. (to keep up spirits, not to despair)

The coach *bears up* (supports) all of his players irrespective of their backgrounds.

His efforts to make a comeback started far too late and they did not *bear upon* (was not relevant to) the final outcome.

You have to *bear with* (have patience with) me until I manage to fix the printer.

BREAK

The car *broke down* (failed) just two miles into the race.

Without warning he *broke off* (stopped suddenly) his speech and ordered everyone to get out.

We are very good friends despite the fact that we *break with* (quarrel with) each other every now and then.

The police team *broke into* (entered by force) the gang's secret hideout.

BRING

His defeat was *brought about* (caused) by his arrogance

Your hard work will inevitably *bring forth* (produce, cause) great success for both you and this company.

She *brought forward* (adduced) a dossier for the jury to go through.

The company's manufacturing unit *brings in* (yields) the most profits.

Her emotional breakdown *brings out* (shows) the human side in her.

The publishers have *brought out* (published) a new book in the series.

It'll be easy to *bring him round* (convert his views) to embrace our ideology.

I was born and *brought up* (reared) in a small village.

CALL

He has *called for* (demanded) an apology from the company.

To do well in this format, the candidates will have to *call out* (draw forth) their analytical and logical skills.

Call in (summon) the fire brigade!

My mother *called on me* (paid me a brief visit) last Sunday.

Amnesia makes it difficult to *call up* (recollect) past incidents.

CARRY

I didn't want to *carry out* (execute) his orders.

He got *carried away* (lost self control) by the excitement.

I have to *carry on* (manage) the business in the absence of my boss.

They were *carried off* (killed) by the deadly epidemic.

CAST

The boat was *cast away* (wrecked) by the storm.

I was *cast down* (depressed) by my dismal exam results.

COME

I don't understand how all this *came about* (happened).

How did you *come buy* (get) his bat?

Do you know when the presentation will *come off* (take place)?

It won't be long until the truth *comes out*. (transpires)

The total bill *comes to* (amounts to) \$500.

His plea is going to *come up* (raised for discussion) in court today.

His injury isn't too serious and he will *come round* (recover) soon enough.

I don't think he will ever *come round* (agree) and embrace our ideology.

CRY

You shouldn't *cry down* (depreciate) something unless you are absolutely sure of it.
Environmental organizations *cried out against* (protested against) the Government's endorsement of genetically modified crops.
The topping student was *cried up* (extolled) by most of his teachers.

CUT

He was *cut off* (died) during the deadly Vietnam war.
I must save money and *cut down* (reduce) on my spending.
I am not *cut out for* (specially fitted to be in) the army.
The suffering he saw in the village *cut him up* (afflicted him, distressed him) terribly.

DO

He was *done for* (ruined) by his arrogance.
I trained for the triathlon in the morning and I am quite *done up*. (exhausted)

FALL

The General ordered his men to *fall back*. (retreat)
I was having a routine trip until I *fell in with* (met accidentally) an enthusiastic businessman.
Fortunately your service *falls in with* (happens to meet) our requirements.
The deal *fell through* (failed to materialize) due to his inability to sign the papers on time.
They don't talk to each other because their families *fell out*. (quarrelled)
His condition has *fallen off* (deteriorated) in the recent few days.
Attendance figures *fell off* (diminished) due to the increase in ticket prices.

GET

I hope I *get off* (escape) with just a minor fine.
I don't *get on with* (live sociably with) arrogant people.
He *got away* (escaped) from the police despite their best efforts. .
I can't *get out* (remove) this log, it's stuck.
The opposition was strong but it has been *got under* (subdued).
This is his way of *getting at* (attacking) me.
I have to *get through* (pass) this exam at any cost.
It's hard to *get out of* (escape from) this prison.

GIVE

You have to do what's right and *give yourself up* (surrender) to the police.
Every doctor I consulted had *given her up*. (have no hope of recovery)
The false information *given forth* (published, noised abroad) by the company has cost them overseas client.
The garbage dump *gave off* (emitted) a foul stench.
We are never going to *give in*. (submit, yield)
It was *given out* (published, proclaimed) that he was dead.
The athlete *gave out* (was exhausted) just after the fifth lap.
The plank *gave way* (broke, snapped) under the pressure.

He took a lot of convincing, but eventually he *gave way*. (yielded)
I am *giving away* (distributing, presenting) free passes to the event.
Give over (abandon) and come back to us.
The cigarette packets lying in his room *gave him away*. (betrayed him)

GO

You shouldn't *go by* (judge from) outer appearances.
It's not a good rule to *go by*. (to be guided by)
I don't have time to *go into* (examine, investigate) that matter.
I hope you have something concrete to *go upon*. (foundation for a statement)
We have it to make it more believable otherwise it won't *go down*. (be believed)
I think the festival *went off well*. (was a success)
I have to *go over* (examine) the minute details.
He has *gone through* (suffered) a lot already.
I haven't *gone through* (examined) the report yet.

HOLD

They *held out* (resisted) valiantly even though their forces were depleted.
He *holds out* (gives) good vibes if you ask me.
Our car was *held up* (stopped on the highway and robbed) by thieves.
It was *held over* (deferred) for the next session.

KEEP

I was *kept in* (confined after school hours) by the teacher.
I was *kept in* (confined to the house) by the horrible weather.
We *kept up* (carried on) a long heated, discussion.
The museum is *kept up* (maintained) by the local authorities.
I have to do my best to *keep up* (maintain) this company's reputation. .
The driver *keeps up* (maintains) his good pace.
She *kept on* (continued) banging the door.
He *kept back* (concealed) important information from the police.

KNOCK

I *knocked about* (wandered about) quite a few places before settling here.
His painting was *knocked down* (sold at an auction) for a very high price.
I was *knocked up* (exhausted) after my session at the gym.

LAY

We beg you to *lay down* (surrender) your weapons and return to the negotiating table.
We are going to *lay out* (invest) a significant amount in stocks and shares.
He was *laid up* (confined to his bed) by the injury.
We should be wise and *lay by* (save for future needs) a considerable amount.

LET

I was *let into* (made acquainted with) the firm's biggest secrets.

I was *let off* (punished leniently) with only a minor fine.

LOOK

Who will *look after* (take care of) him now?

I *look down upon* (despise) people with poor hygiene.

I will have to *look up* (search for) the term on the internet.

I am *looking forward to* (expecting with pleasure) our next game.

I will *look into* (investigate) your complaints.

I *look on* (regard) her as my sister.

We *look to* (hope for) the day when all of us will live in harmony.

Look to (be careful about) your punctuality.

Gold prices are *looking up*. (rising)

Now that his bad patch is behind him, things are *looking up*. (improving)

I *look up to* (respect) my dad.

I am not *looking at* (not interested in) other offers.

MAKE

Hard work *makes for* (conduces to) success.

He *made over* (transfer the title or possession of) a blank cheque to my foundation.

I cannot *make out* (discover) the meaning of this word.

I cannot *make out* (decipher) the inscription on this wall.

I will *make out* (prove) my innocence.

They had trouble getting along at first, but now they have *made up*. (reconciled)

PASS

He *passed by* (overlooked) the minor details while making the presentation.

We have *passed through* (undergone) a lot of suffering.

He *passed himself off* as (pretended to be) a person of importance.

He *passes for* (is regarded as) a reliable source.

PICK

I have to *pick out* (select) the best candidates for the post.

My health has been *picking up*. (regaining or recovering health)

PULL

We have to *pull together* (co-operate, work together in harmony) and save our family.

Somehow he managed to *pull through* (passed with difficulty) the examination.

He has a habit of *pulling down* (demolishing) things.

I was *pulled up* (rebuked, scolded) by the department head for messing up my presentation.

PUT

He *puts on* (assumes) an obnoxious swagger.

Who *put out* (extinguished) the lights?

I was *put out* (annoyed) by his nasty speech.

He was *put out* (disconcerted) by the mixed signals he was receiving.
You have been *putting me off* (evading me) with false promises for too long.
I am going to *put in* (make, send in) an application for the vacant post.
I am not going to *put up with* (endure, tolerate) this injustice any longer.
I didn't do this all on my own, I was *put up to* it (incited) by them.
We won't *put you to* (give you) any trouble.
I'm going to *put off* (postpone) the decision until the next meeting.
The bill was *put through* (passed) despite protests by the opposition.

RUN

He claims to be tired and *run down*. (enfeebled)
You always *run down* (disparage) your opponents.
His time has *run out*. (come to an end)
I have *run through* (squandered) all my savings.
The phone bill has *run up to* (amounted to) \$600.
The business venture has *run into* (incurred) heavy losses.
I *ran against* (chanced upon a meeting with) her at the most unlikely of places.
Interest rates have *run up* (increased) recently.
The water in the bucket is *running over*. (overflowing)

SEE

I *saw through* (detected) the ruse.
No one can *see into* (discern) his guarded personal world.
I am going to the airport to *see her off*. (witness her departure)

SET

He *set aside* (annulled) my suggestions and had the report remade.
I *set about* (took steps towards) arranging the books.
He *set off* (started) for the promised land.
The dress *sets off* (enhances by contrast) your complexion.
You have to help *set me up* (establish myself) in the banking business.
He rented an Aston Martin and *set up for* (pretended to be) a major businessman .
I had no option but to *set him down*. (snub him)
You have no right to *set down* (charge) his fine to me.
He *set you on* (instigated you) to do it, didn't he?
These seats are *set apart* (reserved) for the guests.
You have to *set forth* (explain) your policies clearly.
The army *set upon* (attacked) the beleaguered terrorists.
The monsoon usually *sets in* (begins) towards the end of May.

SPEAK

I don't like this place, there is no decent restaurant to *speak of*. (worth mentioning)
You shouldn't be afraid to *speak out*. (express your opinion freely)

STAND

You have to *stand up for* (maintain) your rights.

We should let this debate *stand over* (be postponed) for a while.

I don't think the army will be able to *stand it out* (endure without yielding) any longer.

We should *stand up for* (champion the cause of) the less privileged people of country.

Thank you for *standing by* (supporting) me even when no one else believed in me.

STRIKE

He was *struck down* (attacked by) by the virus.

My name was *struck off* (removed) by the new superintendent.

The last straw was when he *struck in* (interrupted) while the CEO was giving his annual speech.

TAKE

This table *takes up* (occupies) too much space.

She *takes after* (resembles) her aunt.

It's too complicated a story for me to *take in*. (comprehend)

Recently I have *taken to* (become addicted to) using social networking websites.

TALK

Do you want to *talk over* (discuss) the issues?

I *talked him over* (convinced him by talking) and got him to sign the deal.

TELL

Whatever you do from now on, your past will always *tell against* (prove unfavourable to) you.

The stress from work is *telling upon* (affecting) his health.

THROW

The advantage was *thrown away* (wasted) by the Australians.

The appeal was *thrown out* (rejected) by the court.

Disenchanted by the shoddy treatment he *threw up* (resigned) his appointment.

You should never *throw over* (abandon) old friends.

TURN

The factory *turns out* (produces) ten thousand cans of oil every day.

He has broken too many rules, you should *turn him off*. (dismiss him)

He *turned out* (proved) to be a good singer.

The staff *turned on* (became hostile towards) their boss.

I didn't expect this situation to *turn up*. (happen, take place)

I read your invitation and I promise to *turn up*. (appear)

WORK

I tried my best but nothing would *work on* (influence) his already made-up mind.

We have to *work out* (solve) the problem soon or face the inevitable consequences.

He got *worked up* (excited) just by the mention of her name.

I have to *work upon* (influence) this naive bunch.

Idioms

Idioms exist in every language. They are words or phrases that aren't meant to be taken literally.

Idioms are phrases that have a meaning that is very different from its individual parts. Unlike most sentences that have a literal meaning, idioms have a figurative meaning. A literal meaning is when each word in a sentence stays true to its actual meaning. Figurative meaning is when a combination of words means something different than the individual words do.

There are no fixed rules for idioms. The more you read, better will be your knowledge of idiomatic usages. Since the number of idioms runs into hundreds, practicing is the only way to retain a good number of them.

When the train they missed met with an accident they thought that their missing the train was a *blessing in disguise*. (a misfortune that unexpectedly turned into good fortune)

It's a relief that the exams are over. You can *say that again!* (totally agree with what is said)

In these hills, waterfalls are a *dime a dozen*. (so plentiful or commonplace as to be of little esteem or value)

I don't know how we will pay the maintenance of this house if your company shuts down, but we will *cross that bridge when we come to it*. (deal with a problem when it occurs and not before that)

Even if the news is bad, don't *beat around the bush*. (no delay in approaching a subject directly)

For the past few days, I am feeling *under the weather*. (feeling unwell/ill)

After his father's death, he wanted to study further but he decided to *bite the bullet* and quit college. (perform a painful, difficult task or to endure an unpleasant situation)

When the inspector failed to capture the dacoits, he was *bent out of shape*. (become extremely upset or angry)

I am so exhausted that I will *call it a night*. (go home or go to bed)

Since I am working from home this month, I have the *best of both worlds*. (have all the advantages of two different situations and none of the disadvantages)

He can never work in a team as he has got a *chip on his shoulder*. (have a challenging or belligerent attitude)

His boss usually chided him for being late to work but when he was late even for an important client's presentation, it was the *straw that broke the camel's back*. (the last of a succession of incidents that leads to a loss of patience, a disaster, etc.)

I believe in quality work and do not want to *cut corners*. (not to perform some action in the quickest, easiest, or cheapest way)

The politician's remark about the incident *rubbed the wrong way*. (antagonized or irritated)

By the time the police arrived, the irritated workers had *gotten out of hand*. (become difficult to control)

Even though the driver was injured in the accident, he *pulled himself together* and started helping the rescue teams. (regained the composure)

Rahul has settled in America and comes to visit his parents *once in a blue moon*. (after a very long period of time)

The company had to *go back to the drawing board* as the new product did not pass the required tests. (to start over)

Since it was his first mistake, the teacher *let him off the hook*. (allowed to go without being punished)

Our stay in the Lake Palace in Udaipur cost *an arm and a leg*. (cost a lot of money)



CLASS EXERCISE

Directions: In each question, there are four words. From the given list of prepositions, select the one that can be used with all the four words: to, of, from, with, for, in, on, at, along, up

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. | 2. |
| A. observance ____ | A. tantamount ____ |
| B. covetous ____ | B. resemblance ____ |
| C. apprised ____ | C. antidote ____ |
| D. abhorrence ____ | D. adjacent ____ |
| 3. | 4. |
| A. atone ____ | A. comment ____ |
| B. yearn ____ | B. embark ____ |
| C. customary ____ | C. deliberate ____ |
| D. contempt ____ | D. encroach ____ |
| 5. | 6. |
| A. commensurate ____ | A. digression ____ |
| B. commiserate ____ | B. respite ____ |
| C. conversant ____ | C. desist ____ |
| D. replete ____ | D. recoil ____ |
| 7. | 8. |
| A. stare ____ | A. accomplished ____ |
| B. laugh ____ | B. enveloped ____ |
| C. hint ____ | C. dabble ____ |
| D. connive ____ | D. deficient ____ |

Directions: Fill in the blank in each sentence with a suitable preposition.

9. Without more information, it is very difficult to decide ____ (on / up) the most appropriate course of action.
10. I am meeting him ____ (on / in) Monday.
11. He has served ____ (on / at) the jury at various international film festivals.
12. I was ____ (on / with) a low calorie diet but never went into starvation mode.
13. The dacoits plundered the village at the time when the farmers were busy gathering ____ (up / in) the year's produce.
14. I have to check ____ (up / on) his work before sending it for final approval.
15. These events would have a bearing ____ (on / over) the coming year.
16. His brother is suffering ____ (from / of) tuberculosis.

17. Surprisingly, the protagonist is absent ____ (in / from) the visual frame of the entire film.
18. We began our journey _____ (from / since) the fifth day of April.
19. I have not heard about him _____ (from / since) last week.
20. He has been fighting his battle with destiny _____ (since / from) his childhood.

Directions: *In each question, there are five sentences or parts of sentences that form a paragraph. Identify the sentence(s) or part(s) of sentence(s) that is/are correct in terms of grammar and usage. Then, choose the most appropriate option.*

21.

- A. Much of a manager's work is helping the people who work for him or her
- B. manage their fears of change and of the unknown, as well as their feelings of
- C. insecurity and powerlessness. If a manager can turn that fear up its head
- D. so that it becomes excitement to the prospect of change,
- E. he will get enormously more out of his people.

- 1) A, B and E 2) B, C and D 3) A, D and E 4) All are correct

22.

- A. Panic seems to be the accurate word.
- B. French literary reviews have been awash over
- C. outrage that Mr. Jardin would besmirch the reputation of his grandfather Jean Jardin.
- D. Unlike Papon, who was convicted with crimes against humanity in 1998, Jean Jardin was
- E. pardoned after the war and held a slew of public and private posts until his death in 1976.

- 1) A and D 2) B and E 3) A, C and E 4) B, C and D

23.

- A. With protests being violently put off across the region,
- B. and the uprising in Libya devolving first into civil war and then to
- C. a full-on international conflict, one wonders whether 1848, with its legacy
- D. of violence, bloodshed and ultimate failure in the hands of tenacious counterrevolutionaries,
- E. will turn over to be the best road map we have.

- 1) A and D 2) B and C 3) C and E 4) All are correct

24.

- A. Some of the author's decisions necessarily border about the arbitrary,
- B. and he has no illusions with his version of *The Pale King* being definitive.
- C. *The Pale King* is set in 1985 in a world that immediately feels rich and alive.
- D. The novel is an attempt to stare directly into the blind spot and
- E. face what's there. It's an account of accounting.

1) A, C and D 2) B, C and D 3) A, C and E 4) C, D and E

25.

- A. In *Join the Club*, Rosenberg weighs one kind of peer pressure
- B. with another; but for eons, the question people have asked of
- C. such pressure is not which kind but how much: How should societies
- D. strike the balance with autonomy and conformity?
- E. Getting that balance wrong can be catastrophic.

1) A, C and E 2) B, D and E 3) C, D and E 4) B and D

Directions: Six prepositions are missing in the text. From the options select the cluster of prepositions, which are in the order of blanks as they appear in the text.

26. While creative writing __ (i) __ American literature has always had camps, I believe our current poetic climate is so conflicted and contentious that we have done away __ (ii) ____ talking __ (iii) __ poems on their own organic terms. I'm suggesting that while it is important to attend __ (iv) __ our own academic reputations and political and aesthetic convictions, it is more important that we honour the imagination __ (v) ____ not solely treating the poem against a singular interpretive mechanism. Poems can arrive ____ (vi) __ disparate and conflicting sources.

1) for, with, for, to, in, from 2) in, from, about, for, with, at
3) in, with, about, to, by, from 4) for, from, against, with, of, at



PRACTICE EXERCISE-1

Directions: Fill in the blank in each sentence with a suitable preposition.

1. I have told my mother to start cooking because I will return _____ (within / in) an hour.
2. He sat _____ (beside / besides) him and explained the situation clearly.
3. _____ (Beside / Besides) his ailing mother, he has two children to care for.
4. He walked _____ (till / to) the end of the road where he knew she would be waiting.
5. Since today is a holiday, I will sleep _____ (to / till) five in the evening.
6. Being totally devastated, she jumped _____ (into / in) the well to end her life.
7. In the canteen, I saw her sitting _____ (at / in) the table _____ (in / at) the corner.
8. At present, he should be concerned with no more important issue than _____ (with / no preposition) his daughter's health.
9. The principal stressed _____ (over / on / no preposition) the necessity of being punctual.
10. Do you have time to discuss _____ (about / on / no preposition) the problem that we are facing every day?
11. She lived in a small village outside _____ (of / at / no preposition) the city of Bikaner.
12. I hate going _____ (to / into / no preposition) downstairs when it is dark.
13. This is the house that he came _____ (to / no preposition) during his last visit to India.
14. Mira has a great affection _____ (for / to) her cats but she is not at all affectionate _____ (for / to) her sibling.
15. Now that my elder brother is dead, I am worried whether I am liable _____ (for / to) the debts he has taken from various sources.
16. You will be liable _____ (to / for) a fine for the late return of items you have borrowed from the library.
17. I know you will need some time before you agree _____ (to / with) this proposal of mine.
18. I will buy the flat from him immediately after we agree _____ (to / on / with) the price.
19. People may not always agree _____ (to / with / on) him but they trust him.
20. The child's encounter _____ (against / with) an image that does not in fact correspond _____ (with / to) his experience lays the foundation for what Lacan calls the 'exemplary function' of the mirror stage.
21. I do not have time to argue _____ (with / to) you on this topic.
22. He is a man _____ (of / with) honour and will stick _____ (to / with) his convictions come what may.

Directions: *Identify the incorrect sentence or sentences.*

23.

- A. Science does not draw a distinction across the brain and the mind.
- B. Thinking is seen as a neural phenomenon.
- C. In *Yoga and Ayurveda*, the mind is independent from the brain.
- D. So this is not a physical or biological process but a metaphysical one.

1) A and C 2) B and D 3) A and D 4) B and C

24.

- A. I have known of this story for years.
- B. It could be wrong in detail, not in spirit.
- C. Its certainly not the fictional work of a creative mind.
- D. Veteran diplomats, knowing of it more reliably than I, could tweak it in its true form.

1) A and B 2) C and D 3) B and D 4) A and C

25.

- A. The ignorance about the UID card is across the region.
- B. The public is generally unaware about the applicability of the card.
- C. Beside, the concept of biometric registrations is also very novel.
- D. Lack of awareness is evident among the government machinery, too.

1) A and B 2) B and C 3) C and D 4) B and D

26.

- A. Film is not a war amid pencils and computers.
- B. The animation industry has reached a new maturity where 3D is technically easy to do.
- C. So, it comes around to your creative decision-making.
- D. Not so long ago, making a 3D movie was good enough, but not anymore.

1) A and C 2) B and D 3) A and D 4) B and C

Directions: Six prepositions are missing in the text. From the options select the cluster of prepositions, which are in the order of blanks as they appear in the text.

27. His solution __ (i) __ both these problems is the same, because for him the strange properties __ (ii) __ consciousness, the fact that for those of us that have it the world of dull matter is suffused __ (iii) __ meaning, beauty, relevance and awe – means that it makes sense to think that we are permanent inhabitants of a ‘soul-niche’ or ‘soul-world’. As the jacket blurb of his book has it, ‘consciousness paves the way __ (iv) __ spirituality’, by creating a ‘self-made show’ that ‘lights __ (v) __ the world __ (vi) __ us, making us feel special and transcendent.’
- 1) to, of, with, for, up, for 2) for, with, on, to, on, over
3) to, in, with, towards, up, on 4) for, of, to, on, up, from

Directions: Fill in the blanks in the passage with the most appropriate set of words from the options for each blank. **(Past CAT Questions)**

28. If we watched the lobster _____ its native element, we should see it climbing actively the submerged rocks, _____ which it delights to live, by means of its strong legs; or swimming by powerful strokes of its great tail, the appendages _____ whose sixth joint are spread out _____ a broad fan-like propeller: seize it, and it will show you that its great claws are no mean weapons of offence; suspend a piece of carrion _____ its haunts, and it will greedily devour it, tearing and crushing the flesh _____ means of its multitudinous jaws.
- 1) in, among, of, into, among, by 2) from, through, of, into, among, by
3) in, among, from, in, among, by 4) from, among, of, into, by, by
5) in, among, of, into, among, with



PRACTICE EXERCISE-2

Directions: Six prepositions are missing in the text. From the options select the cluster of prepositions, which are in the order of blanks as they appear in the text.

1. Relevant __ (i) ____ today's war-torn world, *The Palace of Illusions* takes us back __ (ii) ____ the time of the Indian epic *The Mahabharat*. Through her narrator Panchaali, the wife of the legendary five Pandavas brothers, Divakaruni gives us a rare feminist interpretation __ (iii) ____ an epic story. The novel traces Panchaali's life, beginning with her magical birth before following her spirited balancing act as a woman with five husbands who have been cheated out __ (iv) ____ their father's kingdom. Panchaali is swept into their quest __ (v) ____ reclaim their birthright, remaining at the brothers' sides __ (vi) ____ years of exile and a terrible civil war.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1) with, in, on, off, on, over | 2) to, in, over, of, for, through |
| 3) with, to, over, off, to, over | 4) to, to, of, of, to, through |

Directions: Fill in the blanks with the appropriate phrasal verbs given below.

{take up, made up, came across, take back, blew up}

2. I _____ (to find by chance) this letter of my childhood friend.
3. The ridiculous story of an invisible man, that we heard yesterday, was _____ (to invent a false story) by Suraj.
4. When Seema heard about her son's mischief, she _____ (to become angry) and punished him.
5. Manasi finally decided to _____ (to begin a new activity) the job of a receptionist.
6. In front of the headmistress, Rohit had to _____ (to apologize or regret for having said something bad) every thing he had said about the teacher.

Directions: Insert suitable prepositions wherever necessary.

7. How do you go ___ office? It depends ___ the weather. ___ wet days I go ___ train; ___ fine weather I go ___ foot.
8. How do I get ___ the Public Library? Go ___ the end ___ this street and turn right; turn left ___ the next traffic lights and then take the second lane ___ your right. This will bring you ___ Jehangir Street, and you'll find the library ___ your left.
9. Don't leave your luggage ___ the corridor. It will be ___ everyone's way. Bring it ___ the compartment and put it ___ the rack.
10. How are you getting ___ at school? I'm getting ___ all right except ___ Maths. I am very bad ___ Maths; I'll have ___ work harder ___ it, and spend more time ___ it.
11. I described the machine ___ him and asked ___ him if he could make ___ me one like it.
12. All elements ___ the table can be represented ___ real numbers arranged ___ a number line.
13. After much pondering, he sought the help ___ the police whom he thought are capable enough ___ solve his land-related issue.
14. Given tremendous lobbying and cross-voting, he abstained ___ expressing his political choice; he disapproved ___ the political mismanagement.

Directions: Identify the errors in each sentence and correct them. If there is no error, then write 'no error'.

15. I acceded by his views and ideas on democracy.
16. He ran in full speed.
17. The socialite's daughter is engaged with the businessman's son.
18. He deprived me from my rightful share of the property.

19. He asked the menu at the swanky restaurant.
20. Paramount Pictures has tentatively decided to film a sequel of the movie.
21. Children report of back pains mainly because of they carry heavy backpacks.

VA-3.6 | PUNCTUATION AND GRAMMAR REVIEW



Punctuation

Importance of Punctuation

Punctuation is one of the most important features of any language. Yet, most people tend to take it lightly.

Speech is dynamic – generally enhanced by our expressions, gestures, changes in tone and pauses. Hence listeners are able to understand the implication of what is being said. But, given the cold, dead nature of written language, communication becomes severely constrained. To an extent, one can give colour to the text to enhance the communication. That's why STOP is generally in red. Also, we use capital letters. Capital letters are an example of punctuation.

Thus, punctuation, a very important feature of the English language, imparts clarity, dynamism, and visual appeal to the written language.

Punctuation can change the meaning of words. You can find innumerable examples of words acquiring different and even opposite meanings depending on the punctuation. For example:

Don't stop.

Don't, stop.

The comma after the 'don't' has made all the difference in the meaning of the words.

A classic example that is generally given while teaching punctuation is the best that can be. It's this –

A woman without her man is nothing.

Now see the difference punctuation makes:

A woman, without her man, is nothing.

A woman: without her, man is nothing.

See how punctuation has made the same sentence mean two exactly opposite things?

For more such examples you can read: *Eats, Shoots & Leaves: The Zero Tolerance Approach to Punctuation* by Lynne Truss, the former host of BBC Radio 4's *Cutting a Dash* programme. In the book, published in 2003, Truss bemoans the state of punctuation and describes how rules are being relaxed in today's society. Her goal is to remind readers of the importance of punctuation in the English language by mixing humour and instruction.

The title of the book is a syntactic ambiguity—a verbal fallacy arising from an ambiguous grammatical construction—and derived from a joke about bad punctuation:

A panda walks into a café. He orders a sandwich, eats it, then draws a gun and proceeds to fire it at the other patrons.

"Why?" asks the confused, surviving waiter amidst the carnage, as the panda makes towards the exit. The panda produces a badly punctuated wildlife manual and tosses it over his shoulder.

"Well, I'm a panda," he says. "Look it up."

The waiter turns to the relevant entry in the manual and, sure enough, finds an explanation.

"Panda. Large black-and-white bear-like mammal, native to China. Eats, shoots and leaves."

Following are the punctuation marks in English:

1. Capital letters
2. Full stops
3. Commas
4. Semicolons
5. Colons
6. Quotation Marks
7. Parentheses and Brackets
8. Apostrophes
9. Hyphens
10. Dashes
11. Ellipses
12. Question Marks
13. Exclamation Points
14. Slashes

Commas

Commas and periods are the most frequently used punctuation marks. Commas customarily indicate a brief pause; they're not as final as periods.

There are some general rules which you can apply when using the comma.

Rule: Use commas to separate words and word groups in a simple series of three or more items.

I would like to have grapes, watermelon, cherries, and apples.

Note

When the last comma in a series comes before 'and' or 'or' (after 'cherries' in the above example), it is known as the Oxford comma. Most newspapers and magazines drop the Oxford comma in a simple series, apparently feeling it's unnecessary. However, omission of the Oxford comma can sometimes lead to misunderstandings.

We had coffee, bread and butter and juice for breakfast.

Adding a comma after butter makes it clear that bread and butter represents one dish. In cases like this, clarity demands the Oxford comma.

We had coffee, bread and butter, and juice for breakfast.

Rule: Two independent clauses together cannot be run together by using a comma instead of a period. This results in the dreaded run-on sentence or, more technically, a comma splice.

Incorrect: It is nearly half past six, we cannot reach town before dark.

Incorrect: He walked all the way home, he shut the door.

There are several simple remedies. We can write –

It is nearly half past six. We cannot reach town before dark.

Since it is nearly half past six, we cannot reach town before dark.

It is nearly half past six, and we cannot reach town before dark.

Rule: In sentences where two independent clauses are joined by connectors such as *and*, *or*, *but*, etc., put a comma at the end of the first clause.

I like tennis, but I also like cricket.

We can omit the comma if the clauses are both quite short:

I travel and he writes.

Rule: When starting a sentence with a dependent clause, use a comma after it.

If you want to explore this place, I will arrange for a guide.

Follow the same policy with introductory phrases.

Having reached the hotel, we went directly to our room.

Rule: A comma is usually unnecessary when the sentence starts with an independent clause followed by a dependent clause.

I will arrange for a guide if you want to explore this place.

Rule: Use commas to set off nonessential words, clauses, and phrases.

The Empire State Building, which was built in 1930, is New York's tallest building.

In the preceding examples, note the comma after 1930. Nonessential words, clauses, and phrases that occur midsentence must be enclosed by commas. The closing comma is called an appositive comma. Following are two instances of the need for an appositive comma with one or more nouns.

The new employee, Jay, came early.

Rule: If something or someone is sufficiently identified, the description that follows is considered nonessential and should be surrounded by commas.

Amit, who has a limp, travels by train.

If we already know which Amit is meant, the description is not essential.

The boy who has a limp travels by train.

We do not know which boy is meant without further description; therefore, no commas are used. This leads to a persistent problem. Look at the following sentence:

My sister Jaya is here.

Now, see how adding two commas changes that sentence's meaning:

My sister, Jaya, is here.

The first sentence means I have more than one sister. The commas in the second sentence mean that Jaya is my only sister. Why? In the first sentence, Jaya is essential information: it identifies which of my two (or more) sisters I'm speaking of. This is why no commas enclose Jaya. In the second sentence, Jaya is nonessential information—whom else but Jaya could I mean?—hence the commas. Comma misuse is nothing to take lightly. It can lead to a train wreck like this:

Ruskin Bond's book, *The Blue Umbrella*, is a delight.

Because of the commas, that sentence states that Bond wrote only one book. In fact, he wrote more than two dozen of them.

Rule: Use a comma after certain words that introduce a sentence, such as *well, yes, why, hello, hey, etc.*

Yes, I finally found it.

Rule: Use commas to set off expressions that interrupt the sentence flow (*nevertheless, after all, by the way, on the other hand, however, etc.*).

Mrs. Singh, on the other hand, believed in the rumours.

Rule: Use a comma to separate the day of the month from the year, and — what most people forget! — always put one after the year, also.

D-Day, June 6, 1944, was considered a turning point for the Second World War.

No comma is necessary for just the month and year.

My article was printed in the June 2008 issue.

Rule: Use a comma to separate a city from its state, and remember to put one after the state, also.

The plane landed in Nairobi, Kenya, in the evening.

Rule: Traditionally, if a person's name is followed by Sr. or Jr., a comma follows the last name: Martin Luther King, Jr. If a comma does precede Sr. or Jr., another comma must follow the entire name when it appears midsentence.

Mr Matthews, Sr., is here.

Rule: Similarly, use commas to enclose degrees or titles used with names.

Sharmila Mallya, M.D., is here.

Rule: Use commas to introduce or interrupt direct quotations.

He said, "I will not wait here."

"Why," I asked, "can't you wait here?"

This rule is optional with one-word quotations.

He said "Stop."

Rule: If the quotation comes before *he said, she wrote, they reported, Dana insisted,* or a similar attribution, end the quoted material with a comma, even if it is only one word.

"I won't go," he said.

"Stop," he said.

Rule: Use a comma to separate a statement from a question.

I can leave, can't I?

Rule: Use a comma to separate contrasting parts of a sentence.

This is my book, not yours.

Rule: Use a comma before and after certain introductory words or terms, such as *namely*, *that is*, *i.e.*, *e.g.*, and *for instance*, when they are followed by a series of items.

You may choose any item from the list, e.g., pasta, pizza, garlic bread.

Colons

A colon means 'that is to say' or 'here's what I mean'. Colons and semicolons should never be used interchangeably.

Here are certain rules to keep in mind while using a colon:

Rule: Use a colon to introduce an item or a series of items. Do not capitalize the first item after the colon (unless it's a proper noun).

To make a cookie you need the following items: butter, sugar, and flour.

The following people will go in the first batch: Bina, Zoe and Diana.

Rule: A capital letter generally does not introduce a word, phrase, or incomplete sentence following a colon.

He got what he worked for: a new car.

Rule: Avoid using a colon before a list if it directly follows a verb or preposition that would ordinarily need no punctuation in that sentence.

I want butter, sugar, and flour.

NOT

I want: butter, sugar and flour.

Rule: When listing items one by one, one per line, following a colon, capitalization and ending punctuation are optional when using single words or phrases preceded by letters, numbers, or bullet points. If each point is a complete sentence, capitalize the first word and end the sentence with the appropriate ending punctuation. Otherwise, there are no hard and fast rules, except be consistent.

I want an assistant who can do the following:

- fix appointments
- schedule meetings
- complete reports.

These are the pool rules:

- Do not run.
- Wear a safety helmet.
- Follow the trainer's instructions.

Rule: A colon instead of a semicolon may be used between independent clauses when the second sentence explains, illustrates, paraphrases, or expands on the first sentence.

I had a rough weekend: I fractured my hand while playing.

If what follows the colon is closely related to what precedes it, there is no need for a capital. But if what follows is a general or formal statement, we may capitalize the first word.

Remember the old saying: Be careful what you wish for.

Rule: Capitalize the first word of a complete or full-sentence quotation that follows a colon.

The teacher made an announcement: "You will all be rewarded."

Rule: Capitalize the first word after a colon if the information following the colon requires two or more complete sentences.

These are mom's rules: Work hard. Be honest. Don't be late.

Rule: Use a colon rather than a comma to follow the salutation in a business letter, even when addressing someone by his or her first name. (Never use a semicolon after a salutation.) A comma is used after the salutation in more informal correspondence.

Dear Ms. Rodriguez:

Semi-colons

It's no accident that a semicolon is a period atop a comma. Like commas, semicolons indicate an audible pause—slightly longer than a comma's, but short of a period's full stop.

Listed below are some rules to follow while using the semicolon:

Rule: A semicolon can replace a period if the writer wishes to narrow the gap between two closely linked sentences.

Call me tomorrow; I will give you my answer then.

Rule: Avoid a semicolon when a dependent clause comes before an independent clause.

Incorrect: Although I studied; I failed.

Correct: Although I studied, I failed.

Rule: Use a semicolon before such words and terms as *namely, however, therefore, that is, i.e., for example, e.g., for instance*, etc., when they introduce a complete sentence. It is also preferable to use a comma after these words and terms.

Bring any two items; however, no plastic things are allowed.

Rule: Use a semicolon to separate units of a series when one or more of the units contain commas.

The conference has doctors who have come from Mumbai, Maharashtra; Chennai, Tamil Nadu; Bengaluru, Karnataka; and other places as well.

(Note the final semicolon, rather than a comma, after Karnataka.)

Rule: A semicolon may be used between independent clauses joined by a connector, such as *and, but, or, nor*, etc., when one or more commas appear in the first clause.

Heavy snow continues to fall at the airport; consequently, all flights have been grounded.

Quotation marks ('...' or "...")

Following is the list of rules for using quotation marks:

Rule: Use double quotation marks to set off a direct (word-for-word) quotation.

"I hope to see you tomorrow," he said.

Rule: Always capitalize the first word in a complete quotation, even midsentence.

The lawyer said, "This case is far from over."

Rule: Do not capitalize quoted material that continues a sentence.

The lawyer said that this case was “far from over”.

Rule: Use commas to introduce or interrupt direct quotations.

‘I haven’t spoken to Parth for months,’ Dina said.

This rule is optional with one-word quotations.

He said “Stop.”

Rule: If the quotation comes before *he said, she wrote, they reported, Dana insisted,* or a similar attribution, end the quoted material with a comma, even if it is only one word.

“I don’t know,” he said.

“Leave,” he said.

Rule: Quotation marks are used for components, such as chapter titles in a book, individual episodes of a TV series, songs from a Broadway show or a music album, titles of articles or essays in print or online, and shorter works such as short stories and poems.

Sonu Nigam performed the song “All is well” from the movie *3 Idiots*.

Rule: Use single quotation marks for quotations within quotations.

Chinku said: “In the museum we saw a banner with ‘Simon, go back.’”

Note that the period goes inside both the single and double quotation marks. Also note that, as a courtesy, there is visible space between adjacent single and double quotation marks.

Rule: Quotation marks are often used with technical terms, terms used in an unusual way, or other expressions that vary from standard usage.

It’s an oil-extraction method known as “fracking.”

Apostrophes

Following is a list of rules to remember the use of apostrophes:

Rule: Use the apostrophe to show possession. To show possession with a singular noun, add an apostrophe plus the letter ‘s’.

a woman’s hat

Rule: Many common nouns end in the letter 's' (lens, cactus, bus, etc.). So do a lot of proper nouns (Mr. Jones, Texas, Christmas). We show possession simply by adding an apostrophe after the 's'.

Mr. Jones' golf clubs

Texas' weather

Care must be taken to place the apostrophe outside the word in question. For instance, if talking about a pen belonging to Mr. Hastings, many people would wrongly write Mr. Hasting's pen (his name is not Mr. Hasting). So the correct way to write it would be Mr. Hastings' pen

Rule: Regular nouns are nouns that form their plurals by adding either the letter 's' or 'es' (guy, guys; letter, letters; actress, actresses; etc.). To show plural possession, simply put an apostrophe after the 's'.

Incorrect: actresse's award night

Correct: actresses' award night

Rule: Do not use an apostrophe + 's' to make a regular noun plural.

Incorrect: Apple's are healthy.

Correct: Apples are healthy.

In special cases, such as when forming a plural of a word that is not normally a noun, some writers add an apostrophe for clarity.

Here are some do's and don'ts.

In that sentence, the verb 'do' is used as a plural noun, and the apostrophe was added because the writer felt that 'dos' was confusing. However, with single lowercase letters, it is advisable to use apostrophes.

My a's look like u's.

Imagine the confusion if you wrote that sentence without apostrophes. Readers would see *as* and *us*, and feel lost.

Rule: English also has many irregular nouns (child, nucleus, tooth, etc.). These nouns become plural by changing their spelling, sometimes becoming quite different words. You may find it helpful to write out the entire irregular plural noun before adding an apostrophe or an apostrophe + 's'.

Two children's hats (children + apostrophe + s)

Rule: Things can get really confusing with the possessive plurals of proper names ending in ‘s’, such as Hastings and Jones.

If you’re the guest of the Singh family—the Singhs—you’re the Singhs’ guest (Singh + s + apostrophe). But what if it’s the Vyas family? To show possession, add an apostrophe.

The Vyas’ car

In serious writing, this rule must be followed no matter how strange or awkward the results.

Rule: Never use an apostrophe to make a name plural.

Incorrect: The Joshi’s are here.

Correct: The Joshis are here.

Rule: With a singular compound noun (for example, mother-in-law), show possession with an apostrophe + ‘s’ at the end of the word.

My mother-in-law’s dress

If the compound noun (e.g., brother-in-law) is to be made plural, form the plural first (brothers-in-law), and then use the apostrophe + ‘s’.

My two brothers-in-law’s suits

Rule: If two people possess the same item, put the apostrophe + ‘s’ after the second name only.

Shlok and Sara’s home is constructed of redwood.

However, if one of the joint owners is written as a pronoun, use the possessive form for both.

Incorrect: Sanjay and my home

Incorrect: Mine and Sanjay’s home

Correct: Sanjay’s and my home

Note: As the above examples demonstrate, when one of the co-owners is written as a pronoun, use possessive adjectives (*my, your, her, our, their*). Avoid possessive pronouns (*mine, yours, hers, ours, theirs*) in such constructions.

It should be mentioned that compound possessives are often clunky as well as confusing. For instance, a picture of her and Sanjay’s house could refer to a photo of “her” in front of the house that Sanjay owns or a photo of the house that she and Sanjay co-own. Big difference. Such ambiguous sentences should just be rewritten.

Rule: In cases of separate rather than joint possession, use the possessive form for both.

Rita's and Riya's homes are both lovely. (They don't own the homes jointly).

Rita and Riya's homes are both lovely. (The homes belong to both of them).

Rule: Use an apostrophe with contractions. The apostrophe is placed where a letter or letters have been removed.

doesn't, it's, 'tis, can't, you'd, should've, rock 'n' roll, etc.

Rule: There are different schools of thought about years and decades. The following examples are all in widespread use:

The 1990s

The 1990's

The '90s

The 90's

Rule: Amounts of time or money are sometimes used as possessive adjectives that require apostrophes.

Three days' leave

Rule: The personal pronouns *hers*, *ours*, *yours*, *theirs*, *its*, *whose*, and the pronoun *oneself* never take an apostrophe.

Whose glasses are these?

Talking to oneself in public is odd.

Rule: Beware of false possessives, which often occur with nouns ending in 's'. Don't add apostrophes to noun-derived adjectives ending in 's'. Close analysis is the best guide.

Incorrect: We enjoyed the New Orleans' cuisine.

Correct: We enjoyed the New Orleans cuisine.

In the preceding sentence, the word *the* makes no sense unless New Orleans is being used as an adjective to describe cuisine. In English, nouns frequently become adjectives. Adjectives rarely if ever take apostrophes.

Incorrect: I like that Beatles' song.

Correct: I like that Beatles song.

Again, Beatles is an adjective, modifying song.

Rule: Beware of nouns ending in 'y'; do not show possession by changing the 'y' to 'ies'.

Incorrect: The companies policy

Correct: The company's policy

To show possession when a noun ending in 'y' becomes plural, write 'ies'. Do not write y's.

Incorrect: Three company's policies

Correct: Three companies' policies

Exception: Names and other proper nouns ending in 'y' become plural simply by adding an 's'. They do not form their plurals with an apostrophe, or by changing the 'y' to 'ies'.

Incorrect: The Murthies' house was robbed.

Correct: The Murthy's house was robbed.



PUNCTUATION

Directions: Choose the correctly punctuated sentence.

1.

- 1) Ms. Tanu has offered to teach us French however, she is not free on weekdays.
- 2) Ms. Tanu has offered to teach us French; however, she is not free on weekdays.
- 3) Ms. Tanu has offered to teach us French, however she is not free on weekdays.
- 4) Ms. Tanu has offered to teach us French however she, is not free on weekdays.

2.

- 1) My favourite teacher, who is on leave; plans to come back after the vacation.
- 2) My favourite teacher; who is on leave, plans to come back after the vacation.
- 3) My favourite teacher who is on leave, plans to come back after the vacation.
- 4) My favourite teacher, who is on leave, plans to come back after the vacation.

3.

- 1) Major Indian cities: Mumbai Delhi and Bengaluru are among the most polluted cities in the world.
- 2) Major Indian cities; Mumbai, Delhi and Bengaluru are among the most polluted cities in the world.
- 3) Major Indian cities, Mumbai, Delhi and Bengaluru, are among the most polluted cities in the world.
- 4) Major Indian cities Mumbai, Delhi and Bengaluru; are among the most polluted cities in the world.

4.

- 1) My favourite pizza toppings are, sun-dried tomatoes, sliced, red, capsicums, extra cheese and mushrooms.
- 2) My favourite pizza toppings are: sun, dried tomatoes, sliced, red capsicums, extra cheese and mushrooms.
- 3) These are my favourite pizza toppings: sun-dried tomatoes, sliced red capsicums, extra cheese and mushrooms.
- 4) My favourite pizza toppings are; sun, dried tomatoes, sliced-red capsicums, extra, cheese and mushrooms.

5.
 - 1) "I would rather die," said the soldier, "than betray my country."
 - 2) "I would rather die, said the soldier, Than betray my country."
 - 3) "I would rather die" said the soldier "than betray my country."
 - 4) "I would rather die", said the soldier, "than betray my country."
6.
 - 1) As per the timetable the last train will depart at 10:21 pm.
 - 2) As per the timetable: the last train will depart at 10:21 pm.
 - 3) As per the timetable, the last train will depart at 10-21 pm.
 - 4) As per the timetable, the last train will depart at 10:21 pm.
7.
 - 1) You will have to pick up three people at the airport: Rita, my cousin, Milind, her husband, Diya, their daughter.
 - 2) You will have to pick up three people at the airport: Rita, my cousin; Milind, her husband; Diya, their daughter.
 - 3) You will have to pick up three people at the airport: Rita, my cousin, Milind, her husband; Diya their daughter.
 - 4) You will have to pick up three people at the airport; Rita, my cousin; Milind, her husband; Diya their daughter.
8.
 - 1) Though, it rained every day; I liked Brussels' climate.
 - 2) Though it rained every day, I liked Brussels climate.
 - 3) Though it rained every day, I liked Brussel's climate.
 - 4) Though, it rained every day, I liked Brussels climate.
9.
 - 1) With trembling hands he finally, lifted the revolver.
 - 2) With trembling hands he finally lifted the revolver.
 - 3) With trembling hands he, finally lifted the revolver.
 - 4) With trembling hands, he finally lifted the revolver.
10.
 - 1) Reema I have told you so many times, cross your t's and dot your i's.
 - 2) Reema, I have told you so many times, cross your ts and dot your is.
 - 3) Reema, I have told you so many times, cross your t's and dot your i's.
 - 4) Reema I have told you so many times cross your t's and dot your i's.

11.

- 1) Saumya ran very fast to catch her brother, Shlok but she could not catch him.
- 2) Saumya ran very fast to catch her brother, Shlok, but she could not catch him.
- 3) Saumya ran very fast to catch her brother Shlok; but she could not catch him.
- 4) Saumya ran very fast to catch her brother, Shlok but she could not catch him.

12.

- 1) Guru, the owner of the garage, said, "Will you pick up this car tomorrow?"
- 2) Guru, the owner of the garage, said, "will you pick up this car tomorrow?"
- 3) Guru, the owner of the garage said, "Will you pick up this car tomorrow?"
- 4) Guru, the owner of the garage, said "Will you pick up this car tomorrow?"

13.

- 1) My eldest brother, who is a dentist, lives in India, my younger sister, who is a doctor, lives in Kenya.
- 2) My eldest brother, who is a dentist, lives in India; my younger sister, who is a doctor, lives in Kenya.
- 3) My eldest brother, who is a dentist, lives in India: my younger sister, who is a doctor, lives in Kenya.
- 4) My eldest brother, who is a dentist lives in India; my younger sister, who is a doctor lives in Kenya.

14.

- 1) Alexander Popes poem "Solitude", contains these haunting lines: "Thus unlamented, let me die. Steal from the world, and not a stone. Tell where I lie."
- 2) Alexander Pope's poem "Solitude" contains these haunting lines; "Thus unlamented, let me die. Steal from the world, and not a stone. Tell where I lie."
- 3) Alexander Pope's poem, Solitude, contains these haunting lines, "Thus unlamented, let me die. Steal from the world, and not a stone. Tell where I lie."
- 4) Alexander Pope's poem "Solitude" contains these haunting lines: "Thus unlamented, let me die. Steal from the world, and not a stone. Tell where I lie."

15.

- 1) Nearly bursting with joy, John shouted "Voila," before showing his results to the family.
- 2) Nearly bursting with joy John shouted "Voila," before showing his results to the family.
- 3) Nearly bursting with joy, John shouted, "Voila," before showing his results to the family.
- 4) Nearly bursting with joy, John shouted, "voila," before showing his results to the family.

16.

- 1) Outside the house, it was raining heavily, people were scrambling for shelter, and motorists were honking noisily.
- 2) Outside the house it was raining heavily, people were scrambling for shelter: and motorists were honking noisily.
- 3) Outside the house, it was raining heavily: people were scrambling for shelter; and motorists were honking noisily.
- 4) Outside the house it was raining heavily: people were scrambling for shelter: and motorists were honking noisily.

17.

- 1) "Ouch!, yelled Seema, you're stepping on my toes."
- 2) "Ouch!" yelled Seema, "you're stepping on my toes."
- 3) "Ouch!" yelled Seema "your stepping on my toes."
- 4) "Ouch!" yelled Seema, "You're stepping on my toes."

18.

- 1) The teacher wondered, if teaching one more rule, one that required no calculation, would confuse the students.
- 2) The teacher wondered if teaching one more rule one that required no calculation, would confuse the students.
- 3) The teacher wondered if teaching one more rule, one that required no calculation, would confuse the students.
- 4) The teacher wondered if teaching one more rule, one that required no calculation would confuse the students.

19.

- 1) Though she hails from Shimla, Himachal Pradesh she has settled in Mumbai.
- 2) Though she hails from Shimla Himachal Pradesh, she has settled in Mumbai.
- 3) Though, she hails from Shimla, Himachal Pradesh, she has settled in Mumbai.
- 4) Though she hails from Shimla, Himachal Pradesh, she has settled in Mumbai.

20.

- 1) Mumbai is a vibrant city, and it's known for its street food and its film industry.
- 2) Mumbai is a vibrant city and its known for its street food and its film industry.
- 3) Mumbai is a vibrant city and its known for its street food and it's film industry.
- 4) Mumbai is a vibrant city and it's known for its street food and it's film industry.



CLASS EXERCISE

GRAMMAR REVIEW

Directions: *From the given options, select the sentence that does not have any error of modifier and is grammatically correct.*

1.
 - 1) Being a sunny day, we cannot go out without our umbrellas.
 - 2) It being a sunny day, we cannot go out without our umbrellas.
 - 3) For being a sunny day, we cannot go out without our umbrellas.
 - 4) It being a sunny day, we cannot be going out without our umbrellas.
2.
 - 1) Looking towards the east, dark clouds were threatened to bring rain.
 - 2) Looking towards the east, I saw dark clouds which threatened to bring rain.
 - 3) I saw dark clouds looking towards the east, which threatened to bring rain.
 - 4) I see looking towards the east, dark clouds which threatened to bring rain.
3.
 - 1) Running across the floor the rug slipped and I lost my balance.
 - 2) The rug slipped and lost the balance as I was running across the floor.
 - 3) The rug slipped, running across the floor and I lost my balance.
 - 4) As I was running across the floor, the rug slipped and I lost my balance.
4.
 - 1) We ate the lunch that slowly we had bought.
 - 2) We ate the lunch that we had bought slowly.
 - 3) We slowly ate the lunch that we had bought.
 - 4) We ate the lunch that we slowly had bought.
5.
 - 1) We ate pizzas after the movie which were very spicy.
 - 2) The pizzas we ate were spicy after the movie.
 - 3) The pizzas were very spicy after the movie we ate.
 - 4) The pizzas we ate after the movie were very spicy.
6.
 - 1) Eric received a warning from the police officer who was speeding.
 - 2) Eric received a warning from the speeding police officer.
 - 3) Eric who was speeding received a warning from the police officer.
 - 4) Eric received a speeding warning from the police officer.
7.
 - 1) I met Mona at a bookstore who has a beautiful smile.
 - 2) Mona, who has a beautiful smile, was met by me at a bookstore.
 - 3) I met Mona, who has a beautiful smile, at a bookstore.
 - 4) Mona, who have a beautiful smile, met me at a bookstore.

8.
 - 1) Walking home, the sudden storm drenched Ashok.
 - 2) The sudden storm, walking home, drenched Ashok.
 - 3) Ashok drenched the sudden storm, walking home.
 - 4) Walking home, Ashok was drenched by the sudden storm.
9.
 - 1) Yesterday I watched a movie, which is actually a love-story, at a theatre near my place.
 - 2) Yesterday I watched a movie at a theatre near my place, which is actually a love-story.
 - 3) Yesterday I watched a movie, at a theatre, which is a love-story, near my place.
 - 4) Yesterday I watched a movie at a theatre, which is actually a love-story, near my place.
10.
 - 1) Turning the corner, the scenery was very striking.
 - 2) The scenery was quite striking, turning the corner.
 - 3) When we turned the corner, the scenery was striking.
 - 4) The scenery was striking the corner, when we turned.

Directions: *In each of the following questions, four different ways of presenting an idea are given. Choose the one that is grammatically correct and conforms most closely to standard English usage.*

11.
 - 1) They had fewer complaints in the new house which had an area with fewer than 1000 square feet.
 - 2) They had less complaints in the new house which had an area with less than 1000 square feet.
 - 3) They had less complaints in the new house which had an area with fewer than 1000 square feet.
 - 4) They had fewer complaints in the new house which had an area of less than 1000 square feet.
12.
 - 1) If we win the match, there was a large bonus in store for us.
 - 2) If we win the match, there will be a large bonus in store for us.
 - 3) If we won the match, there will be a large bonus in store for us.
 - 4) If we win the match, there would have been a large bonus in store for us.
13.
 - 1) If the door were left open, burglars would have no trouble getting in.
 - 2) If the door was left open, burglars would have no trouble getting in.
 - 3) If the door were left open, burglars had no trouble getting in.
 - 4) If the door was left open, burglars had no trouble getting in.
14.
 - 1) If we have known the area well, we will have never gotten into this mess.
 - 2) If we had known the area well, we will have never gotten into this mess.
 - 3) If we had known the area well, we would had never gotten into this mess.
 - 4) If we had known the area well, we would have never gotten into this mess.
15.
 - 1) The accused pleaded with the judge to have him believes his statement.
 - 2) The accused pleaded with the judge to have him believe his statement.
 - 3) The accused pleaded with the judge to have him believed his statement.
 - 4) The accused pleaded with the judge to have him to believe his statement.

16. 1) I would rather you had leave earlier.
2) I would rather you be leaving earlier.
3) I would rather you leave earlier.
4) I would rather you left earlier.
17. 1) It is high time that you started look for a job.
2) It is high time that you start look for a job.
3) It is high time that you start looking for a job.
4) It is high time that you started looking for a job.
18. 1) During his job with the airlines, he has knocked over the world a great deal.
2) During his job with the airlines, he has knocked down the world a great deal.
3) During his job with the airlines, he has knocked about the world a great deal.
4) During his job with the airlines, he has knocked up the world a great deal.
19. 1) Their patience had been tested by those juveniles since three years, but things had been better for some time now.
2) Their patience had been tested by those juveniles for three years, but things had been better for some time.
3) Their patience had been tested by those juveniles since three years now, but things had been different for some time.
4) Their patience had been tested by those juveniles for three years now, but things had been different since some time.
20. 1) Beside the bus stop stood the house that belonged to a colleague of Reema.
2) Besides the bus stop stood the house that belonged to a colleague of Reema.
3) Besides the bus stop stood the house that belonged to a colleague of Reema's.
4) Beside the bus stop stood the house that belonged to a colleague of Reema's.



PRACTICE EXERCISE-1

Directions: *Identify the kind of clause in the underlined parts of the sentences given below.*

1. You may stand where he is standing.

1) adverb clause of place	2) noun clause
3) adjective clause	4) adverb clause of reason

2. The bag which has a blue lid is mine.

1) adverb clause of reason	2) adjective clause
3) noun clause	4) adverb clause of place

3. We expect that she will be here soon.

1) noun clause	2) adverb clause of manner
3) adjective clause	4) adverb clause of reason

4. Can you wait till I return?

1) adjective clause	2) adverb clause of place
3) adverb clause of time	4) noun clause

5. We know how it worked out?

1) noun clause	2) adverb clause of reason
3) adverb clause of place	4) adjective clause

6. The dog followed wherever he went.

1) adverb clause of purpose	2) adverb clause of condition
3) adjective clause	4) adverb clause of place

7. Vikas fears that he shall fall.

1) noun clause	2) adverb clause of place
3) adjective clause	4) adverb clause of condition

8. Reshma told me a story that sounded fictitious.

1) adverb clause of reason	2) noun clause
3) adjective clause	4) adverb clause of place

9. Why he betrayed his country is a mystery.
- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1) adjective clause | 2) noun clause |
| 3) adverb clause of reason | 4) adverb clause of condition |
10. The reason why he committed the crime is obvious.
- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1) adjective clause | 2) noun clause |
| 3) adverb clause of reason | 4) adverb clause of place |
11. Even if I am not well I shall come for the picnic.
- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1) adverb clause of comparison | 2) adverb clause of time |
| 3) adverb clause of condition | 4) adverb clause of supposition |
12. Shama put the money where she could find it again.
- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1) adverb clause of reason | 2) adverb clause of place |
| 3) adjective clause | 4) noun clause |
13. She found fault in what he did.
- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1) adverb clause of time | 2) noun clause |
| 3) adverb clause of condition | 4) adjective clause |
14. Did I tell you about the author whom I met?
- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1) adverb clause of condition | 2) adverb clause of place |
| 3) adjective clause | 4) noun clause |
15. She believed that some day her son would come back.
- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1) adjective clause | 2) noun clause |
| 3) adverb clause of reason | 4) adverb clause of condition |

Directions: *In the sentences given below, a part of each sentence or the entire sentence is underlined. From among the options, choose the one that is grammatically correct and concise to replace the underlined part.*

16. This office needs more major repairs.
- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1) major repairs | 2) more major repairs |
| 3) most major repair | 4) repairs majorly |
17. The hunter noticed that a herd of cows were passing by the lake.
- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1) were passing | 2) is passing | 3) have passing | 4) was passing |
|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|

18. Neither Akshay nor Kanta have done the homework today.
 - 1) Akshay nor Kanta have done the home work today.
 - 2) Neither Akshay or Kanta had done the homework today.
 - 3) Neither Akshay nor Kanta has done the homework today.
 - 4) Neither Akshay or Kanta has done the homework today.

19. Once you solve few questions, you will know what the exam structure will be like.
 - 1) a few 2) few 3) the few 4) fewer

20. Sahara desert is one of the largest deserts.
 - 1) Sahara deserts 2) The Sahara desert
 - 3) The Sahara deserts 4) None of these

21. The computers are used in many organisations.
 - 1) The computers are used in 2) Computers are used in
 - 3) The computers are used in lot of 4) Computers used in many

22. After the explorer conquered Brazil, he is murdered by the locals.
 - 1) he is murdered by the locals.
 - 2) he was murdered by the locals.
 - 3) he would have been murdered by the locals.
 - 4) he would be murdered by the locals.

23. Having rested, the expedition was resumed.
 - 1) the expedition resume.
 - 2) resumption of the expedition took place.
 - 3) they resumed the expedition.
 - 4) they decided to resuming the expedition.

24. The Director General of the World Trade Organisation says he is very disappointed that talks in Geneva on trade liberalisation had not reached an agreement.
 - 1) he is very disappointed that talks in Geneva on trade liberalisation have not reached an agreement.
 - 2) he was very disappointed that talks in Geneva on trade liberalisation have not reached an agreement.
 - 3) he is very disappointed that talks in Geneva on trade liberalisation have not reached into an agreement.
 - 4) he is very disappointed that talks at Geneva on trade liberalisation have not reached an agreement.

25. It is a penal offence to bribing a public servant.
- 1) It has been a penal offence for bribing a public servant.
 - 2) It is a penal offence to be bribed by a public servant.
 - 3) It is a penal offence to bribe a public servant.
 - 4) It is a penal offend to bribe a public servant.
26. In a case of death of an old man by drowning, the government ruled out that the family was not eligible for compensation from the government as the man did not make any financial contribution to the family.
- 1) the government ruled out that the family was not eligible for
 - 2) the government ruled that the family was not eligible for
 - 3) the government laid a rule that the family was not eligible to
 - 4) the government as a rule said that the family was not eligible for
27. The climate of Europe is cooler than Uganda.
- 1) is cooler than that of
 - 2) is cooler than
 - 3) is cooler to
 - 4) none of these
28. The sportsman is the nephew of the old man, who won the gold medal at the Olympics.
- 1) The sportsman is the nephew of the old man, who won the gold medal at the Olympics.
 - 2) The sportsman is the nephew of the old man, and has won the gold medal at the Olympics.
 - 3) The sportsman, who won the gold medal at the Olympics, is the nephew of the old man.
 - 4) None of the above.
29. Why complain when I am getting up everyday at 3 o'clock?
- 1) when I am getting up everyday at
 - 2) when I am getting up everyday about
 - 3) when I get up everyday at
 - 4) when I will be up everyday from
30. My aunt is recuperating in the hospital and I have to go and see her.
- 1) is recuperating in the hospital and I have to
 - 2) is recuperating in the hospital and has to
 - 3) is recuperating in hospital and I have to
 - 4) none of the above

Directions: In each of the following questions, there are sentences that form a paragraph. Identify the sentence(s) or part(s) of sentence(s) that is/are incorrect in terms of grammar and usage (including spelling, punctuation and logical consistency). Then, choose the most appropriate option.

31.

- A. There have been more droughts in the
- B. south in recent years, that have tended
- C. to last longer. Typhoons have reduced in total
- D. number in the last four decades, but they have
- E. become more intense and are tracking southwards.

1) A and B 2) D and E 3) Only C 4) Only B

32.

- A. One of the more famous cases is of
- B. Baptist minister Don Piper, which appeared to have
- C. met his unfortunate demise more than 20 years ago
- D. when a 16-wheeler smashed into his Ford Escort
- E. head-on while crossing a bridge in Texas.

1) A and B 2) C and E 3) A and D 4) B and D

33.

- A. Of all his flying machines, this is one of the
- B. very last and one of the most fascinating.
- C. Drawn less than ten years prior to Leonardo's death,
- D. they are the only one of his designs which is a true glider
- E. and shows the beginnings of controlled glider flight.

1) Only B 2) Only D 3) Only E 4) None

34.

- A. Paper making is one of China's four
- B. great ancient inventions. In the Han Dynasty,
- C. people began to use bamboo to make paper, and which
- D. was of excellent quality and reasonable price. Even now they are
- E. used as one of the important raw materials in paper-making.

1) A and E 2) A and B 3) C and D 4) B and E

35.

- A. I had the dream again.
- B. Crouched on the floor, the shadow became a man,
- C. the same man who I've met before. Every time his face
- D. disappeared into darkness, the light would reveal another
- E. sitting in his place, but again, it was still the same man.

1) Only B

2) Only C

3) Only E

4) B and E



PRACTICE EXERCISE-2

Directions: *In each of the following questions, four different ways of presenting an idea are given. Choose the one that is grammatically correct and conforms most closely to standard English usage.*

1.
 - 1) Many men attempt to make money quickly by the talents at their disposal.
 - 2) Many men attempt to quickly make money with the talents at their disposal.
 - 3) Many men attempt to quickly make money by the talents at their disposal.
 - 4) Many men attempt to make money quickly with the talents at their disposal.
2.
 - 1) His master called out an explanation of his conduct.
 - 2) His master called in an explanation of his conduct.
 - 3) His master called up an explanation of his conduct.
 - 4) His master called for an explanation of his conduct.
3.
 - 1) They slew the giant Ymir, and out of his body formed the earth; of his blood, the seas; his bones, the mountains; his hair, the trees; his skull, the heavens; and his brain, the clouds, charged with hail and snow.
 - 2) They slew the giant Ymir, and out of his body formed the earth; of his blood, the seas; of his bones, the mountains; of his hair, the trees; of his skull, the heavens; and of his brain, clouds, charged with hail and snow.
 - 3) They slew the giant Ymir, and out of his body formed the earth; of his blood, the seas; of his bones, the mountains; of his hair, the trees; of his skull, the heavens; and of his brain, clouds, and charged with hail and snow.
 - 4) They slew the giant Ymir, and out of his body was formed the earth; his blood, the seas; his bones, the mountains; of his hair, the trees; of his skull, the heavens; and of his brain, clouds, which were charged with hail and snow.
4.
 - 1) Once at New York, the tourists are keen to visit Manhattan.
 - 2) Once at New York, the tourists are keen visiting Manhattan.
 - 3) Once in New York, the tourists are keen visiting Manhattan.
 - 4) Once in New York, the tourists are keen to visit Manhattan.
5.
 - 1) Sonia was beside her sick friend to the very end.
 - 2) Sonia was besides her sick friend upto the very end.
 - 3) Sonia was beside her sick friend till the very end.
 - 4) Sonia was besides her sick friend till the very end.
6.
 - 1) During our vacation to the countryside, we stayed at the best possible hotel.
 - 2) During our vacation at the countryside, we stayed at the best possible hotel.
 - 3) While our vacation to the countryside, we stayed at the best hotel possible.
 - 4) During our vacation at the countryside, we stayed at the best hotel possible.

7.
 - 1) Stone memorials in Muli, built for each person who died in the battle, testifies to the folly and the moral integrity of that day.
 - 2) Stone memorials in Muli, built for each person who died in the battle, testify to the folly and the moral integrity of that day.
 - 3) Stone memorials in Muli, built for each person who died in the battle testify for the folly and the moral integrity of that day.
 - 4) Stone memorials in Muli, build for each person who died in the battle testify the folly and the moral integrity of that day.

8.
 - 1) David lost a few teeth through the brawl; but he still seems able to chew his food easily.
 - 2) David lost a few teeth in the brawl; since he still seems able to chew his food easily.
 - 3) David lost a few teeth over the brawl; since he still seems able to chew his food easily.
 - 4) David lost a few teeth in the brawl; but he still seems able to chew his food easily.

9.
 - 1) Even before being opened this week, the Star trial has become a feast of conspiracy and deceit.
 - 2) Even before its opening this week, the Star trial has become a feast of conspiracy and deceit.
 - 3) Though it opened this week, even before this, the Star trial has become a feast of conspiracy and deceit.
 - 4) While it was being opened this week, the Star trial has become a feast of conspiracy and deceit.

10.
 - 1) Her thesis was highly esteemed, and is now being prepared for publication.
 - 2) Her thesis was highly estimated, and would now be prepared for publication.
 - 3) Her thesis was highly esteemed, and was now being prepared for publication.
 - 4) Her thesis was highly esteemed, and have now prepared for publication.

11.
 - 1) Defining the right outcomes does expect a lot from employees; but it is probably the only way to nurture self-awareness and self-reliance in your people.
 - 2) Defining the right outcomes do expect a lot from employees; but probably it is the only way to nurture self-awareness and self-reliance in your people.
 - 3) In order to define the right outcomes, a lot from employees is expected; but it probably is the one and only way to nurture self-awareness and self-reliance in your people.
 - 4) Defining the right outcomes comes from a lot from employees which shows that there is probably no better way to nurture self-awareness and self-reliance in your people.

12.
 - 1) In a non-discreet dusty bylane of Jallo village, in Pakistan, a group of women and young girls gather literacy and life-skills in makeshift classrooms.
 - 2) In a non-descript dusty bylane of Jallo village, in Pakistan, a group of women and young girls gather literacy and lifeskills in makeshift classrooms.
 - 3) In a non-descript dusty bylane of Jallo village in Pakistan, a group of women and young girls gathers literacy and life-skills in makeshift classrooms.
 - 4) Inside a non-descript dusty bylane of Jallo-village in Pakistan, a group of women and young girls gather literacy and life-skills in makeshift classrooms.

13.
 - 1) The theory advanced in this book by Mr. Hooper, a former BBC Africa correspondent, was that AIDS was accidentally introduced during vaccine trials in the 1950s.
 - 2) The theory advanced in this book by Mr. Hooper, a former BBC Africa correspondent, is that AIDS was accidentally introduced during the vaccine trials in the 1950s.
 - 3) The theory advanced in this book by Mr. Hooper, a former BBC Africa correspondent, is that AIDS was accidentally introduced while vaccine trials in the 1950s.
 - 4) The theory advanced in this book by Mr. Hooper, a former BBC Africa correspondent, is that AIDS is accidentally introduced while vaccine trials in the 1950s.

14.
 - 1) Truly organic writers refuse to yield some part at least of themselves in the translation; that part is hidden away in the interiors of the language with which only sensitive native readers have access.
 - 2) Truly organic writers refuse to yield at least some part of themselves in the translation; that part is hidden away in the interiors of the language to which only sensitive native readers have access.
 - 3) Truly organic writers refuse to yield at least some part of themselves in the translation; being hidden away in the interiors of the language to which only sensitive native readers have access.
 - 4) Truly organic writers refuse to yield at least some part of themselves in the translation; that part is hidden away in the interiors of the language for which only sensitive native readers have access.

15.
 - 1) My friend purchased a new four-wheeler besides the two-wheeler that he owns.
 - 2) My friend purchased a new four-wheeler beside the two-wheeler.
 - 3) My friend bought a new four-wheeler beside the two-wheeler that he owns.
 - 4) My friend bought a new four-wheeler besides the two-wheeler which he already had with him.

16.
 - 1) The friend, who transmits the message, said it was for Fred and I.
 - 2) The friend, who transmitted the message, said it was for Fred and myself.
 - 3) The friend, who transmitted the message, said it was for Fred and me.
 - 4) The friend, whom transmitted the message, said it was for Fred and me.

17.
 - 1) Close to the heels of the volte-face of the privatisation of the state-owned airlines, the civil aviations ministry is now doing a flip-flop on the quantum of the foreign direct investment to be allowed in Indian airline companies.
 - 2) Close on the heels of the volte-face for the privatisation of the state-owned airlines, a flip-flop is now being done by the civil aviation ministry on the quantum of the foreign direct investment to be allowed in Indian airline companies.
 - 3) Close on the heels of the volte-face on the privatisation of the state-owned airlines, the civil aviations ministry is now doing a flip-flop on the quantum of the foreign direct investment to be allowed in Indian airline companies.
 - 4) Close to the heels of the volte-face on the privatisation about the state-owned airlines, the civil aviations ministry is now doing a flip-flop on the quantum of the foreign direct investment to be allowed in Indian airline companies.

Directions: Each statement has a part missing. Choose the best option from the four options given below the statement to make up the missing part.

18. We insist that he _____ the underworld don.
- 1) conduct the investigation properly and initiate extradition proceedings against
 - 2) conducts the investigation properly and initiates extradition proceedings for
 - 3) conducts the investigation properly and initiates extradition proceedings against
 - 4) conduct the investigation properly and initiates extradition proceedings for
19. This write-up is _____
- 1) equal, if it isn't better than, the last one.
 - 2) equal to, if not better than, the last one.
 - 3) equivalent, if not better, than the last one.
 - 4) equal, if not better, than the previous one.
20. The high rate of taxes, _____ the main reason for extensive tax evasion.
- 1) along with half-hearted revenue collection procedures, are
 - 2) together with half-hearted revenue collection procedures, is
 - 3) together with half-hearted revenue collection procedures, are
 - 4) and half-hearted revenue collections procedure, is

Directions: In the sentences given below, a part of each sentence or the entire sentence is underlined. From among the options, choose the one that is grammatically correct and concise.

21. Julie had been sleeping for eight hours. (and is still sleeping)
- 1) had been sleeping
 - 2) having sleeping
 - 3) has been sleeping
 - 4) sleeping
22. I have finished eating when my boss came to meet me.
- 1) have finished eating and then
 - 2) had finished eating when
 - 3) have finished eating as
 - 4) having finished eating
23. I am going to embark on a voyage soon.
- 1) will be going
 - 2) shall be going
 - 3) have been going
 - 4) am going
24. The revelry lasted in the night.
- 1) through the night
 - 2) all along the night
 - 3) since the night
 - 4) for the night

25. I am accountable for my Managing Director.
- 1) accountable with 2) accountable to
3) accountable against 4) accountable along
26. I have never knew him to be happy.
- 1) have never known 2) had never knew
3) have never know 4) have never knew
27. Give a more heavier push to move this heavy object.
- 1) more heavier 2) most heavy 3) heavier 4) heavy
28. After family, the school plays an important role while determining the personality of a child and has the greatest effect on the individual.
- 1) while determining 2) to determine
3) when determining 4) in determining
29. Adjustment is the process of trying to bring in a balance between needs, stimuli and the opportunities offered by the environment.
- 1) to bring in 2) bringing in
3) to bring about 4) to bring together
30. The automobile industry pioneered the use of satisfaction surveys and probably spent more money on them than any other industry.
- 1) spent more money on them than any other industry.
2) spends more money on them than on any other industry.
3) spends more money on them than any other industry.
4) has spent more money on them than on any other industry.

Directions: In each of the following questions, there are sentences that form a paragraph. Identify the sentence(s) or part(s) of sentence(s) that is/are incorrect in terms of grammar and usage (including spelling, punctuation and logical consistency). Then, choose the most appropriate option.

- 31.
- A. If he won he whistled, if he lost he whistled.
- B. It mattered little. Good-looking, well dressed, generous
- C. to a fault, tainted but moderately with scandal,
- D. he was a man who everybody admired,
- E. but who admired few in return.
- 1) Only B 2) Only C 3) Only D 4) B and E

32.

- A. The cuisine served at our wedding
- B. was absolutely delicious. In the crowd were
- C. several food lovers that, with each bite, were
- D. more and more pleased that they had
- E. made the journey to Mexico.

1) Only B 2) A and D 3) Only C 4) B and E

33.

- A. It is undeniable that among the most potent indicators
- B. of the state of any nation is the condition of its roads.
- C. Though our country is considered
- D. foremost among the developing nations,
- E. our roads are worse than war ravaged nations.

1) A and D 2) B and E 3) C and D 4) A and B

34.

- A. The coroner was requested several times to summon
- B. the medical attendant, as the jury was divided regarding
- C. what verdict it should return; but he refused to do
- D. so, alleging that the magistrates had complained
- E. of the enormous amount of money expended in fees to medical witnesses.

1) Only A 2) Only B 3) B and D 4) B, C and E

35.

- A. There are currently a number of self-report measures
- B. available for assessing social anxiety among younger adults.
- C. Unfortunately, none of the measures that has been used
- D. with younger cohorts has norms or other psychometric data
- E. supporting their use with older adults.

1) Only B 2) A and C 3) B and D 4) Only E



PRACTICE EXERCISE-3

Directions: *In the sentences given below, a part of each sentence or the entire sentence is underlined. From among the options, choose the one that is grammatically correct and concise to replace the underlined part.*

1. The new boss is seeming reticent.
 - 1) is reticent.
 - 2) is seemingly reticent.
 - 3) seems reticent.
 - 4) seem reticent.

2. Deceived by his children, all hope was lost.
 - 1) Deceived by his children, he was losing all hope.
 - 2) Deceived by his children, hope and all was lost.
 - 3) Deceived by his children, he lost all hope.
 - 4) He lost all hope on his children deceiving him.

3. There have been numerous cases of burglaries in this area which have been left unreported, hasn't it?
 - 1) cases of burglaries in this area which had been left unreported, hasn't it?
 - 2) instances of burglaries in this area which have been left unreported.
 - 3) cases of burglaries in this area that had remained unreported, hadn't they?
 - 4) cases of burglaries in this area that have been left unreported, isn't that so?

4. Imagine choosing a career in which you would become so involved that you fail to take any notice of your personal life.
 - 1) would become
 - 2) would have become
 - 3) become
 - 4) became

5. The new student is seeming arrogant.
 - 1) is arrogant.
 - 2) is seemingly arrogant.
 - 3) seems arrogant.
 - 4) is seeming arrogant.

6. We have had usually lunch at 1 p.m.
 - 1) had usually
 - 2) will have usually
 - 3) usually have
 - 4) will usually have

7. The flood victim died with cholera.
 1) died over 2) died from 3) died of 4) died with

8. After the author completed the novel, he is murdered by the distributor.
 1) he would be murdered by the distributor.
 2) he was murdered by the distributor.
 3) he would have been murdered by the distributor.
 4) he is murdered by the distributor.

9. Just when consumers were starting to feel good about eating British meat again, a new health hazard erupted, threw the farming industry into crisis.
 1) a new health hazard erupted, threw the farming industry into crisis.
 2) a new health hazard having erupted threw the farming industry into crisis.
 3) a new health hazard erupted, throwing the farming industry into crisis.
 4) an erupting new health hazard threw the farming industry into crisis.

10. The recent change in the Quarterly's book-review is not only short-sighted but also self-defeating.
 1) The recent change in the Quarterly's book-review is not only short-sighted but also self-defeating.
 2) The change of late in the Quarterly's book-review is not only short-sighted but self-defeating.
 3) The recent change in the Quarterly's book-review is not short-sighted only but also is self-defeating.
 4) The change that has been made recently in the Quarterly's book-review is not only short-sighted and also self-defeating.

11. It is precisely because judgement has so much importance, and such an excellent activity of both the human brain and human culture, that it is necessary to point out the dangers.
 1) It is precisely because judgement has so much importance, and such an excellent activity of both the human brain and human culture
 2) It is precisely because judgement being so important, and such an excellent activity of both the human brain and human culture
 3) It is precisely because judgement is so important, and was such an excellent activity of both the human brain and human culture
 4) It is precisely because judgement is so important, and is such an excellent activity of both the human brain and human culture

12. She drank greedily the offered glass of wine and forgot all about the robbed bank-notes lying on the table in full view.
 - 1) She drank greedily the offered glass of wine and forgot all about the robbed bank-notes lying on the table in full view.
 - 2) She drank greedily the offered glass of wine and forgot all about the stolen bank-notes lying on the table in full view.
 - 3) She greedily drank the offered glass of wine and forgot all about the stolen bank-notes lying on the table in full view.
 - 4) She greedily drank the offered glass of wine and forgot all about the robbed bank-notes lying on the table in full view.

13. Police believed that it was significant that recently he had opened a bank account abroad.
 - 1) recently he had opened a bank account abroad.
 - 2) he had opened a bank account abroad recently.
 - 3) he had recently opened a bank account abroad.
 - 4) he had opened a bank account recently abroad.

14. For the next two or three years Louise managed, notwithstanding her weak heart, to go dressing beautifully to all the most lively parties, gambling very heavily, to dance and even flirt with tall slim young men.
 - 1) dressing beautifully to all the most lively parties, gambling very heavily, to dance and even flirt with tall slim young men.
 - 2) beautifully dressed to all the most lively parties, gamble very heavily, to dance and even to flirt with tall slim young men.
 - 3) dressing beautifully to all the most lively parties, gambling very heavily, dancing and even flirting with tall slim young men.
 - 4) beautifully dressed to all the most lively parties, to gamble very heavily, to dance and even to flirt with tall slim young men.

15. Baz Luhrmann's latest work on Paris' famous nightclub tries to take us into a real world of love and passion, but the route it selected, through music and theatrical artifice, is riddled with the same weaknesses that plagues the 19th century Bohemians.
 - 1) but the route it selected, through music and theatrical artifice, is riddled with the same weaknesses that plagues the 19th century Bohemians.
 - 2) but the route it selected, through music and theatrical artifice, was riddled with the same weaknesses that plagued the 19th century Bohemians.
 - 3) but the route it selects, through music and theatrical artifice, is riddled with the same weaknesses that plagues the 19th century Bohemians.
 - 4) but the route it selects, through music and theatrical artifice, is riddled with the same-weaknesses that plagued the 19th century Bohemians.

16. It is difficult to distinguish the non-poisonous snakes from the poisonous variety as the hood of cobras is similar to the non-poisonous variety.
- 1) as the hood of cobras is similar to the non-poisonous variety.
 - 2) because the hood of cobras is similar to the non-poisonous variety.
 - 3) as the hood of cobras is quite similar to the non-poisonous variety.
 - 4) as the hood of the cobra is similar to that of the non-poisonous variety.
17. Bad books can be interesting not only for what they say, they in addition are interesting for what they represent.
- 1) they in addition are interesting for what they represent.
 - 2) they are interesting in addition for what they represent.
 - 3) but also for what they represent.
 - 4) but what they represent is also interesting.
18. Mumbai has a pleasant climate, has lots of friendly people and many fascinating neighbourhoods.
- 1) has lots of friendly people and many fascinating neighbourhoods.
 - 2) has lots of people who are friendly and has many fascinating neighbourhoods.
 - 3) lots of friendly people and many fascinating neighbourhoods.
 - 4) and lots of friendly people and many fascinating neighbourhoods.
19. That is Kalidasa's, the poet's house.
- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1) the poet, Kalidasa | 2) Kalidasa's, the poet's |
| 3) Kalidasa, the poet's | 4) Kalidasa, the poets' |

Directions: Each question consists of four sentences on a topic. Some sentences are grammatically incorrect or inappropriate. Select the option that indicates the grammatically correct and appropriate sentence(s).

20. A. These findings constitute for a powerful argument for reproductive freedom.
 B. When motherhood is a self-chosen activity, it is much more likely to achieve the level of intensity and enjoyment that produces optimal human growth.
 C. We wouldn't even be having these discussions about the joy of mothering and its beneficial impact on children if childbearing were still compulsory and the only life option for women, as it were for most until recently.
 D. The enjoyment of one's children goes hand in hand with the fact that we have fewer of them, later in life, when they are deeply wanted.
- | | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1) A & B | 2) A & C | 3) B & D | 4) C & D |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|

21. A. According to some physicists, we will all be resurrected in the far future in a virtual reality with a memory capacity of 10 to the 10123 bytes.
 B. If the virtual reality was good enough, it would be indistinguishable from our everyday experience.
 C. One problem, among many, is that this resurrection machine would require so much energy that the universe must one day collapse.
 D. But present data show that this is not going to happen.
 1) A 2) D 3) A & B 4) C & D
22. A. The day of her journey was lovely, full of sweet, blue autumn hazes.
 B. The road to the Bay Shore was mostly down-hill, running for part of the way through spruce barrens, its banks edged with ferns, sweet-smelling bay bushes and clusters of scarlet pigeon-berries.
 C. There was a blue, calm sea at the end and an old grey house fronting the sunset, so close to the purring waves that in storms their spray dashed over its very doorstep ... a wise old house that knew many things.
 D. It was her mother's old home, and therefore she felt she had to love it, whether she could love the people in it or not.
 1) A & D 2) C & D 3) A, B & D 4) A, B & C
23. A. There was a big, polished brass door-handle in which she saw herself reflected with such a funny face.
 B. The blinds were pulled down and she loved the cool, blue-green light that filled the room ... it made her feel like a mermaid in an aquamarine, shimmering sea-pool.
 C. She loved the little procession of six ivory, white elephants marching along the black mantelpiece.
 D. And she couldn't help but gaze admiringly at the deep Battenburg lace scallops on the window shades.
 1) A & D 2) B & C 3) A, B & D 4) A, C & D

Directions: Each question consists of four sentences on a topic. Some sentences are grammatically correct and some are incorrect. Select the option that indicates the grammatically incorrect and inappropriate sentence(s).

24. A. Before measles immunisation was available, nearly everyone in the U.S. got measles.
 B. Although less common, some persons with measles develop encephalitis, resulting in brain damage.
 C. If vaccinations are stopped, each year about 2.7 million measles deaths worldwide could be expected.
 D. More than 90 percent of people who are not immune will get measles if they are exposed to the virus.
 1) A, B & C 2) A, B & D 3) Only B 4) Only C

25. A. The men look about with half-shuttered eyes, rubbing the gold heavy chains like talismans around their wrists and necks.
B. Their wives are dressed in brilliant African prints and dazzling metallic outfits.
C. Everybody else are making cheerful preparations to go to places like Kenya, Malawi or St. Mauritius.
D. It has been implied that if we tried to talk to anyone who opposes the President, the interview is off.
- 1) A & B 2) B & C 3) A, C & D 4) B, C & D
26. A. The activists did not respond in any way and tried to defuse the situation peacefully.
B. The marine officer pushed two activists of the kerb into the street and knocked the phone out of the third activists hand.
C. He insisted that they moved their protest to the opposite side of the street.
D. Throughout this outrageous incident, the activists maintained composure and did absolutely nothing to aggravate the situation.
- 1) A & D 2) B & C 3) A & C 4) B, C & D
27. A. A pale hand reached up slowly to comb a few errant locks of silver away from the General's face.
B. Falling back, terrified that he had just about killed his Cloud, the silver warrior collapsed over the side of the seat and started crawling away.
C. If he was the reason Cloud died, he could never forgive himself.
D. He could feel a painful pulse in his legs and couldn't tell if he had them curled up under himself or spread behind him.
- 1) C & D 2) A, B & C 3) A, B & D 4) B & D

Directions: From the given options in each question, select the one that does not have any error of modifier and is grammatically correct.

28. 1) Baked, boiled or fried you can make potatoes a part of almost any meal.
2) Potatoes can be a part of any meal baked, boiled or fried.
3) Baked potatoes, boiled or fried can become a part of any meal.
4) Baked, boiled or fried potatoes can be a part of any meal.
29. 1) The job took an hour to scarcely complete.
2) The job took scarcely an hour to complete.
3) Scarcely the job took an hour to complete.
4) The job took an hour to complete scarcely.



PRACTICE EXERCISE-4

Directions: *In the sentences given below, a part of each sentence or the entire sentence is underlined. From among the options, choose the one that is grammatically correct and concise.*

1. If American power has declined, so does the power of its dependants.
 - 1) has declined, so does
 - 2) declines, so does
 - 3) will decline, so does
 - 4) will decline, so did

2. The coastal haze often creeps up the foothills towards the ridge but never seems to reach the sun-drenched summit.
 - 1) The coastal haze often creeps up the foothills towards the ridge but never seems to reach the sun-drenched summit.
 - 2) The coastal haze often crept up the foothills towards the ridge but never seems to reach the sun-drenched summit.
 - 3) The coastal haze often creeps up the foothills towards the ridge but never seemed to reach the sun-drenched summit.
 - 4) The coastal haze often creeps up the foothills towards the ridge but never reached the sun-drenched summit.

3. From his grief-gouged eyes, to the way he presses his hands together to stop them from shaking, it's clear that if Syamsudin Noor made it through the next few weeks, he will still be a dead man inside.
 - 1) it's clear that if Syamsudin Noor made it through the next few weeks, he will still be a dead man inside.
 - 2) it's clear that if Syamsudin Noor were to make it through the next few weeks, he is still a dead man inside.
 - 3) it's clear that if Syamsudin Noor makes it through the next few weeks, he is still a dead man inside.
 - 4) it's clear that if Syamsudin Noor makes it through the next few weeks, he will still be a dead man inside.

4. The delegates poured into the hall: the French, the Italians, Spanish, and Portuguese.
 - 1) the French, the Italians, Spanish, and Portuguese.
 - 2) the French, the Italians, the Spanish, and the Portuguese.
 - 3) the French, the Italians, Spanish, and the Portuguese.
 - 4) French, Italians, Spanish, and the Portuguese.

5. Man's intelligence is superior to the ape's.
 - 1) is superior as
 - 2) is superior from
 - 3) is as superior to
 - 4) no error

6. Though we have not experienced such extreme temperatures, at least in the South of the Indian peninsula, this techsavvy group had managed to evolve a foolproof system using sensors to clear up the ice on high density polyethylene roofs and thereby eliminate any damage to the structure.
 - 1) had managed to evolve a foolproof system using sensors to clear up the ice on high density polyethylene roofs and thereby eliminate
 - 2) has managed to evolve a foolproof system using sensors for clearing up the ice on high density polyethylene roofs and thereby eliminate
 - 3) had managed in evolving a foolproof system using sensors to clear up the ice on high density polyethylene roofs and thereby eliminate
 - 4) managed to evolve a foolproof system using sensors to clear up the ice on high density polyethylene roofs and thereby eliminating

7. Is another of Jawaharlal Nehru's misinterpreted legacies being sacrificed in the altar of market economics?
 - 1) Is another of Jawaharlal Nehru's misinterpreted legacies being sacrificed in the altar of market economics?
 - 2) Is another one of Jawaharlal Nehru's misinterpreted legacies sacrificed in the altar of market economics?
 - 3) Is another one of Jawaharlal Nehru's misinterpreted legacies being sacrificed on the altar of market economics?
 - 4) Is another one of Jawaharlal Nehru's misinterpreted legacies is being sacrificed at the altar of market economics?

8. Shanghai's sweltering temperatures keep visitors usually at a minimum, but officials more than 100 at the city descended from Beijing last week investigating what state media have dubbed biggest financial scandal in years of Shanghai.
 - 1) Shanghai's sweltering temperatures keep visitors usually to a minimum, but officials from Beijing more than 100 descended in the city last week investigating what state media has dubbed biggest financial scandal in years of Shanghai.
 - 2) Shanghai's sweltering temperatures keep visitors usually to a minimum, but more than 100 officials from Beijing descended last week on the city to investigate what state media have in years dubbed Shanghai's scandal of finance.
 - 3) Sweltering temperatures of Shanghai usually keep visitors to a minimum, but still more than 100 officials from Beijing descended to investigate on the city last week what biggest financial scandal in years have dubbed Shanghai.
 - 4) Shanghai's sweltering temperatures usually keep visitors to a minimum, but more than 100 officials from Beijing descended on the city last week to investigate what state media have dubbed Shanghai's biggest financial scandal in years.

9. When we looked at the car, we could tell that it was a large, new, blue, box-shaped, metal, racing machine.
 - 1) it was a new, blue, large, metal, box-shaped, racing machine.
 - 2) it was a large, blue, new, metal, box-shaped, racing machine.
 - 3) it was a new, large, box-shaped, blue, metal racing machine.
 - 4) it was a large, new, blue, box-shaped, metal racing machine.
10. Arun had a strict regimen for his exam: he used to answer practice questions, at home, tirelessly, twice a day, after his meals, to improve his scores.
 - 1) he used to answer practice questions, tirelessly, at home, twice a day, after his meals, to improve his scores.
 - 2) he used to answer practice questions, at home, tirelessly, twice a day, after his meals, to improve his scores.
 - 3) he used to answer practice questions, at home, twice a day, after his meals, tirelessly, to improve his scores.
 - 4) he used to answer practice questions, tirelessly, twice a day, at home, after his meals, to improve his scores.
11. The prisoner's dilemma is a non-zero-sum game that illustrates a conflict between what seems a rational individual behaviour and the benefits of co-operation, in certain situations where short-term gains produces loss later on.
 - 1) in certain situations where short-term gains produced loss latter on.
 - 2) in certain situations where short-term gains produce loss later on.
 - 3) in certain situations where short-term gains were produced by losses later on.
 - 4) in certain situations where losses were produced by short-term gains.
12. As early as the 1950s, a doyen of the world of financial institutions, H. T. Parekh, had argued for public-private partnership in such institutions.
 - 1) As early as the 1950s, a doyen of the world of financial institutions, H. T. Parekh
 - 2) As early as the 1950s, H. T. Parekh, a doyen of the world of financial institutions
 - 3) In as early as the 1950s, a doyen of the world of financial institutions, H. T. Parekh
 - 4) It was in the early 1950s that H. T. Parekh, a doyen of the world of financial institutions
13. It was barely midnight when I arrived home but I found both of them sitting at the table and, waiting on me.
 - 1) two of them sitting at the table and waiting on me.
 - 2) both of them sitting at the table and waiting on me.
 - 3) both of them sitting at the table and waiting for me.
 - 4) both of them sitting on the table and waiting for me.

14. The nobleman bowed as he took her leave after she asked him to keep in touch.
- 1) bowed as he took her leave after she asked him
 - 2) bowed as he took her leave immediately after she asked him
 - 3) bowed as he took leave of her after she asked him
 - 4) bowed as he took leave right after she asked him
15. In 1980, a study conducted on private schools found out that not only do private schools discriminate against kids of families who belong to the middle income group, in addition preference is given to the kids whose parents can give large donations to the school fund.
- 1) in addition preference is given to the kids whose parents can give large donations to the school fund.
 - 2) in addition those kids whose parents can give large donations to the school fund are preferred.
 - 3) but also gave preference to those kids whose parents could give large donations to the school fund.
 - 4) but they also prefer those kids whose parents can give large donations to the school fund.
16. Either you must grant his request or incur his ill will.
- 1) Either you must grant his request or incur his ill will.
 - 2) You must either grant his request or incur his ill will.
 - 3) You either must grant his request, or incur his ill will.
 - 4) You must either grant his request; or incur his ill will.
17. The government plans to invest \$15 million, to be made over a period of ten years.
- 1) The government plans to invest \$15 million, to be made over a period of ten years.
 - 2) The government planned to invest \$15 million, over a period of ten years.
 - 3) The company plans to invest \$15 million over a period of ten years.
 - 4) The company had planned to invest \$15 million over five years.

Directions: *In each of the following questions, there are sentences that form a paragraph. Identify the sentence(s) or part(s) of sentence(s) that is/are correct in terms of grammar and usage (including spelling, punctuation and logical consistency). Then, choose the most appropriate option.*

- 18.
- A. Charges and countercharges mean nothing
 - B. to the few million who have lost their home.
 - C. The nightmare is far from over, for the government
 - D. is still unable to reach hundreds who are marooned.
 - E. The death count have just begun.

- 1) A only
 - 2) C only
 - 3) A and C
 - 4) D only
 - 5) A, C and D
- (Past CAT question)**

19.

- A. Most of us considers it
- B. a virtue to maintain our
- C. principles in the face of social pressure,
- D. but in the involuted world of gourmet morals,
- E. constancy is rudeness.

1) A, B and C 2) B, D and E 3) B, C, D and E 4) All are correct

20.

- A. Since 1964, when New Hampshire introduced
- B. the first modern state lottery,
- C. governments has come to rely
- D. on gaming revenue. Forty-three states and
- E. every Canadian province currently runs lotteries.

1) B, D and E 2) A, D and E 3) B, C and E 4) A, B and D

21.

- A. Rabelais' use of his native tongue and dialectical forms
- B. were astoundingly original, lively and creative.
- C. He is arguably one of the authors
- D. who has enriched the French language
- E. in the most significant way.

1) A, C and E 2) B, D and E 3) A, B and D 4) B, C and D

22.

- A. Even though there are more than
- B. one option for each position, the coach
- C. must select exactly one player
- D. to fill each of the five positions.
- E. You have a slots game.

1) A, B and C 2) B,D and E
3) A, C, D and E 4) B, C, D and E

23.

- A. Vikram knows that the performance of his employees,
- B. as well as his career, depend on shielding them
- C. from threats. This notion that management “buffers”
- D. the core work of the company from external perturbations
- E. are an old theme in organizational theory.

1) B and D 2) A and E 3) A, C and D 4) B, C and D

24.

- A. In the orphanage, Oliver find
- B. a friend in Nancy; but neither she
- C. nor the boys is fit for a life of crime.
- D. The life that Oliver and the boys have ahead of them
- E. are worse than they could have envisioned.

1) B and D 2) C and E 3) A , B and C 4) B, D and E

Directions: Each question consists of four sentences on a topic. Some sentences are grammatically incorrect or inappropriate. Select the option that indicates the grammatically correct and appropriate sentence(s).

25.

- A. Large reductions in the ozone layer, which sits about 15-30 km above the Earth, take place each winter over the polar regions, especially the Antarctic, as low temperatures allow the formation of stratospheric clouds that assist chemical reactions breaking down ozone.
- B. Industrial chemicals containing chlorine and bromine have been blamed for thinning the layer because they attack the ozone molecules, making them to break apart.
- C. Many an offending chemicals have now been banned.
- D. It will still take several decades before these substances have disappeared from the atmosphere.

1) Only D 2) B and D 3) Only A 4) A and C

(Past CAT question)

26.

- A. Over the years, experts have developed various treatment methods for schizophrenia.
 - B. However, they are currently testing several methods and therapy procedures that would lessen the symptoms or reverse the conditions of schizophrenia in a more effective way.
 - C. One of the methods that has emerged from this researches is known as the occupational therapy.
 - D. This treatment focus on helping patients in achieving independence in all areas of their lives.
- 1) Only A 2) Only C 3) C and D 4) A and B

27.

- A. The corporate world want you to be as tough as nails.
 - B. No wonder most people thinks women will have a tough time surviving in this jungle.
 - C. Apart from the glass ceiling, there are biases and prejudices that women in the corporate world have to work against.
 - D. According to industry surveys, no more than 20% of India's corporate workforce comprise women.
- 1) A and B 2) C and D 3) Only C 4) Only D

28.

- A. Eugenics study the methods of improving the quality of the human race, specially by selective breeding.
 - B. The idea of dead scientists engaging in an experiment in eugenics are incredible enough.
 - C. Yet the most striking feature in this episode is the power that is ascribed to science itself.
 - D. But the boundaries of scientific knowledge are smudged and shifting, and seem clear only in hindsight.
- 1) Only A 2) Only C 3) A and B 4) C and D

29.

- A. Anyone who have ever had dialysis know that one session takes about 5 hours.
 - B. Milka had to undergo it three times a week.
 - C. Sometimes a patient is better afterwards, at other times not so good.
 - D. Milka decided not to shut herself away, but rather to be among people.
- 1) A, B and C 2) B, C and D 3) A and D 4) Only B

30.

- A. In spite of the presence of the barrier, the waters of the two adjacent seas mix very slowly without one sea encroaching upon the other.
- B. Thus, neither of the two seas transgress by carrying its own properties to the other, although they mix during the process of meeting.
- C. Most commentators suggest that the barrier that separates the two seas referred to here is an invisible barrier.
- D. Some commentators find it difficult to reconcile the idea of the seas being merging and the presence of a barrier at the same time, for the presence of a barrier entail the prevention of merging.

1) Only A 2) Only B 3) A and C 4) B and D

31.

- A. Economists express individual and social behaviour and decision-making based on a calculative analysis and algorithmic predictability hinged on a presumed desire for productivity gains and resource maximization.
- B. However, let us not forget that pure reliance on such calculations were one of the fundamental causes of the recent financial and banking crisis.
- C. Indeed, even economists agree that society as well as individual and social behaviour involve more than sheer numbers, and require an understanding of the 'soft' issues and realities of 'everyday life'.
- D. Therefore, while realigning public finances and national objectives towards a more balanced budget we must not forget that the art of politics is best expressed as the harmonious and effective conjugation of economic objectives, national priorities and social policies within the contextual constraints of political and social realities.

1) A and D 2) B and C 3) A, B and C 4) C and D

32.

- A. Prescriptivism is an inevitable outgrowth of a civilized commercial society.
- B. A society such as ours in which high levels of social and economic mobility coexist with high levels of literacy are one in which people advance by means of language, among other things.
- C. People gain employment and promotions by their ability to speak and write.
- D. The job of somebody compiling a dictionary of English usage is to tell us what most people says, not to exercise a fictional authority over the language.

1) Only A 2) Only C 3) B and D 4) A and C

Directions: In each of the questions, four different ways of presenting an idea are given. Choose the one that conforms most closely to Standard English usage.

33.

- 1) The running of large businesses consist of getting somebody to make something that somebody else sold to somebody else for more that its cost.
- 2) The running of a large business consists of getting somebody to make something that somebody else will sell to somebody else for more than it costs.
- 3) The running of a large business consists of getting somebody to sell something that somebody else made for more than it cost.
- 4) The running of large businesses consist of getting somebody to make something else that somebody else will sell to somebody else for more than it costs.

(Past CAT question)

34.

- 1) It is the speaker, not his ideas that have inspired the audience.
- 2) It is the speaker's ideas that has inspired the audience.
- 3) It is the speaker, not his ideas, that has inspired the audience.
- 4) Its the ideas of the speaker that has inspired the audience.

35.

- 1) Accepting that everyone has his own problems is the first step towards managing your own problems.
- 2) Accepting that everyone have their own problems is the first step towards managing your own problems.
- 3) Accepting that everyone have his or her own problems is the first step towards managing your own problems.
- 4) Accepting that everyone has their own problems are the first step towards managing your own problems.

36.

- 1) The idea that the spike in oil prices will inevitably wreak havoc on the US economy have become deeply rooted in the American psyche, and in turn the United States have made ensuring the smooth flow of crude from the Middle East a central tenet of its foreign policy.
- 2) The idea that the spike in oil prices will inevitably wreak havoc on the US economy have become deeply rooted in the American psyche, and in turn the United States has made ensuring the smooth flow of crude from the Middle East a central tenet of its foreign policy.
- 3) The idea that the spike in oil prices will inevitably wreak havoc on the US economy has become deeply rooted in the American psyche, and in turn the United States have made ensuring the smooth flow of crude from the Middle East a central tenet of its foreign policy.
- 4) The idea that the spike in oil prices will inevitably wreak havoc on the US economy has become deeply rooted in the American psyche, and in turn the United States has made ensuring the smooth flow of crude from the Middle East a central tenet of its foreign policy.

37.

- 1) International-relations experts writing about recent events suffers a handicap that other scholars avoid: information that can make or break our arguments is often classified.
- 2) International-relations experts writing about recent events suffer a handicap that other scholars avoid: information that can make or break our arguments is often classified.
- 3) International-relations experts writing about recent events suffers a handicap that other scholars avoid: informations that can make or break our arguments are often classified.
- 4) International-relations expert writing about recent events suffer a handicap that other scholar avoids: information that can make or break our arguments is often classified.



PRACTICE EXERCISE-5

Directions: Each sentence below has been broken up into four parts sequentially (1), (2), (3) and (4). Choose that part which contains a mistake. (Past CAT Questions)

1. A feasibility survey has now **(1)** been completed in India to establish **(2)** a network of felicitate contacts **(3)** between small and medium enterprises **(4)**.
 1) A feasibility survey has now 2) been completed in India to establish
 3) a network of felicitate contacts 4) between small and medium enterprises.
2. Privatization generally represents **(1)** an ideological response **(2)** to the perceived problem **(3)** in public sector **(4)**.
 1) Privatization generally represents 2) an ideological response
 3) to the perceived problem 4) in public sector.
3. The Indian government's choice **(1)** of the EEC as a partner **(2)** stem from the fact **(3)** that the community is the most important market for India **(4)**.
 1) The Indian government's choice
 2) of the EEC as a partner
 3) stem from the fact
 4) that the community is the most important market for India.
4. A person who earns a **(1)** few thousand rupees **(2)** and decides to save **(3)** many of it must be a miser **(4)**.
 1) A person who earns a 2) few thousand rupees
 3) and decides to save 4) many of it must be a miser.
5. Had you been in my **(1)** position, you were definitely **(2)** shown your displeasure **(3)** at the turn of events **(4)**.
 1) Had you been in my 2) position, you were definitely
 3) shown your displeasure 4) at the turn of events.
6. I definitely disagree **(1)** with the position that **(2)** require money **(3)** to be the prime motivator **(4)**.
 1) I definitely disagree 2) with the position that
 3) require money 4) to be the prime motivator.

7. This has slowed the progress **(1)** of reforms in many countries **(2)** because the choice of either of the extreme **(3)** positions inevitably invite criticism **(4)**.
- 1) This has slowed the progress
 - 2) of reforms in many countries
 - 3) because the choice of either of the extreme
 - 4) positions inevitably invite criticism.
8. Gavaskar was a great batsman who **(1)** having played more than a 100 **(2)** test matches, he then decided **(3)** to call it a day **(4)**.
- 1) Gavaskar was a great batsman who
 - 2) having played more than a 100
 - 3) test matches, he then decided
 - 4) to call it a day.
9. When we sold of all our **(1)** furniture, crockery and **(2)** other household goods **(3)** the room looked bare **(4)**.
- 1) When we sold of all our
 - 2) furniture, crockery and
 - 3) other household goods
 - 4) the room looked bare.
10. In the history of mankind **(1)** it has always been **(2)** minority which have been **(3)** able to change the world **(4)**.
- 1) In the history of mankind
 - 2) it has always been
 - 3) minority which have been
 - 4) able to change the world.
11. Management education is **(1)** becoming highly sought after **(2)** by aspiring ambitious students **(3)** because of the high demand in the job market **(4)**.
- 1) Management education is
 - 2) becoming highly sought after
 - 3) by aspiring ambitious students
 - 4) because of the high demand in the job market.
12. Pakistan was the team **(1)** whom most people thought **(2)** would win the World Cup **(3)** held in 1987 **(4)**.
- 1) Pakistan was the team
 - 2) whom most people thought
 - 3) would win the World Cup
 - 4) held in 1987
13. When you turn to your right, **(1)** you will find a big house **(2)** with a beautiful garden on the front side off it **(3)** and that is my residence **(4)**.
- 1) When you turn to your right,
 - 2) you will find a big house
 - 3) with a beautiful garden on the front side off it
 - 4) and that is my residence.

14. I have been postponing calling **(1)** on my friend in the hospital, **(2)** but I am planning **(3)** I would go there tomorrow **(4)**.
1) I have been postponing calling 2) on my friend in the hospital,
3) but I am planning 4) I would go there tomorrow.
15. I wondered who could be calling me at midnight **(1)** and when I took the call **(2)** I found it was not other **(3)** than my fiancé from Paris **(4)**.
1) I wondered who could be calling me at midnight
2) and when I took the call
3) I found it was not other
4) than my fiancé from Paris.
16. I want you to take the first bus, **(1)** to go to the bank, **(2)** remit this cheque and then **(3)** come back here **(4)**.
1) I want you to take the first bus, 2) to go to the bank,
3) remit this cheque and then 4) come back here.
17. When a bubble rises from the bottom of a lake, we **(1)** are not seeing it, not even when it has nearly **(2)** come to the surface; it is only when it bursts **(3)** and makes a ripple, we know it is there **(4)**.
1) When a bubble rises from the bottom of a lake, we
2) are not seeing it, not even when it has nearly
3) come to the surface; it is only when it bursts
4) and makes a ripple, we know it is there.
18. Despite being gentle and good-hearted, **(1)** what is one to do **(2)** when confronted by abuse and anger **(3)** from other? **(4)**
1) Despite being gentle and good-hearted,
2) what is one to do
3) when confronted by abuse and anger
4) from other?
19. To add a watermark only, **(1)** to selected pages, **(2)** you must separate the document **(3)** into sections. **(4)**
1) To add a watermark only, 2) to selected pages,
3) you must separate the document 4) into sections.

20. The police have prevented **(1)** Rajan of leaving the **(2)** city without informing them **(3)** two days in advance. **(4)**
- 1) The police have prevented
2) Rajan of leaving the
3) city without informing them
4) two days in advance.
21. I could have **(1)** given the documents **(2)** to you if **(3)** you asked for them **(4)**.
- 1) I could have
2) given the documents
3) to you if
4) you asked for them.
22. You did not wait **(1)** for us before you **(2)** went to meet **(3)** him did you? **(4)**
- 1) You did not wait
2) for us before you
3) went to meet
4) him did you?
23. Have you invited **(1)** for the lecture **(2)** on astrophysics **(3)** this evening? **(4)**
- 1) Have you invited
2) for the lecture
3) on astrophysics
4) this evening?
24. It is essential that diseases like tuberculosis **(1)** are detected and treated **(2)** as early as possible to **(3)** assure a successful cure **(4)**.
- 1) It is essential that diseases like tuberculosis
2) are detected and treated
3) as early as possible to
4) assure a successful cure.
25. The Bombay Police have found **(1)** the body of a man **(2)** who they believe to be **(3)** the prime suspect in the murder case **(4)**.
- 1) The Bombay Police have found
2) the body of a man
3) who they believe to be
4) the prime suspect in the murder case.
26. If one has to decide **(1)** about the choice of a career **(2)** you should choose an option **(3)** which is really beneficial. **(4)**
- 1) If one has to decide
2) about the choice of a career
3) you should choose an option
4) which is really beneficial.

27. Almost all school teachers insist that **(1)** a student's mother **(2)** is responsible for the student's conduct **(3)** as well as his dress **(4)**.

- 1) Almost all school teachers insist that
- 2) a student's mother
- 3) is responsible for the student's conduct
- 4) as well as his dress.

28. In the forthcoming elections **(1)** every man and woman **(2)** must vote for the candidate **(3)** of their choice **(4)**.

- 1) In the forthcoming elections
- 2) every man and woman
- 3) must vote for the candidate
- 4) of their choice.

Directions: In each of the following questions, there are sentences that form a paragraph. Identify the sentence(s) or part(s) of sentence(s) that are incorrect in terms of grammar and usage (including spelling, punctuation and logical consistency). Then, choose the most appropriate option.

29.

- 1. At the Drones Club and other places,
- 2. I am accustomed to frequently,
- 3. you will often hear comments on my self-control or sang-froid,
- 4. as it's sometimes called,
- 5. and it is generally agreed that this is considerable.

- 1) 1
- 2) 2
- 3) 3
- 4) 4

Directions: A sentence is divided into five parts, with a number assigned to each part. Identify the part that has a grammatical error. The number of that part is the answer.

30. The people who are most vociferously **(1)** in favour of a single world language **(2)** tends to come from major monolingual nations **(3)** and make the assumption that, when the day arrives **(4)** it will be their own language which, of course, everyone will use.**(5)**

- 1) 1
- 2) 2
- 3) 3
- 4) 4

31. Our ability to devote our lives to something **(1)** we deem it more important than our own personal welfare **(2)** or our own biological imperative to have an offspring **(3)** is one of the things that set us aside **(4)** from the rest of the animal world **(5)**.

- 1) 1
- 2) 2
- 3) 3
- 4) 4